

# AGENDA

**Council**

**Tuesday 26 April 2022 at 10.30am**

## Northland Regional Council Agenda

Meeting to be held in the Council Chamber  
36 Water Street, Whangārei  
on Tuesday 26 April 2022, commencing at 10.30am

**Recommendations contained in the council agenda are NOT council decisions. Please refer to council minutes for resolutions.**

RĪMITI (Item)	Page
<b>1.0 NGĀ MAHI WHAKAPAI (HOUSEKEEPING)</b>	
<i>Key Health and Safety points to note:</i>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the fire alarm goes off – exit down the stairwell to the assembly point which is the visitor carpark.</li><li>• Earthquakes – drop, cover and hold</li><li>• Visitors please make sure you have signed in at reception, and that you sign out when you leave. Please wear your name sticker.</li><li>• The toilets are on the opposite side of the stairwell.</li><li>• Please adhere to the recommended Covid alert guidance that applies.</li></ul>	
<b>2.0 KARAKIA TIMATANGA – TAUĀKI Ā ROTO (OPENING KARAKIA)</b>	
<b>3.0 NGĀ WHAKAPAHĀ (APOLOGIES)</b>	
<b>4.0 NGĀ WHAKAPUAKANGA (DECLARATIONS OF CONFLICTS OF INTEREST)</b>	
<b>5.0 NGĀ WHAKAAE MINITI ME TE MAHERE MAHI (COUNCIL MINUTES AND ACTION SHEET)</b>	
5.1 Confirmation of Minutes - Council Meeting 23 March 2022 and Extraordinary Council Meeting 12 April 2022	6
5.2 Receipt of Action Sheet	18
<b>6.0 NGĀ RIPOATA PUTEA (FINANCIAL REPORTS)</b>	
6.1 Financial Report to 31 March 2022	20
<b>7.0 NGĀ TAKE (DECISION MAKING MATTERS)</b>	
7.1 Continuity over council recess	24
7.2 2022 Local Body Triennial Elections	29
7.3 Audit Fee Proposal For Year Ending 30 June 2022 and 30 June 2023	59
7.4 Future Harbour Remediation Business Case	67
7.5 New Land Management Approach	71
7.6 Request to Carry Forward Operating Expenditure Budget for S-Map	82
7.7 Council submission on ETS changes - retrospective approval	85



<b>7.8</b>	<b>Adoption of Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy</b>	<b>97</b>
<b>8.0</b>	<b>NGĀ RIPOATA MAHI (OPERATIONAL REPORTS)</b>	
<b>8.1</b>	<b>Health and Safety Report</b>	<b>189</b>
<b>8.2</b>	<b>Chair's Report to Council</b>	<b>193</b>
<b>8.3</b>	<b>Chief Executive's Report to Council</b>	<b>195</b>
<b>9.0</b>	<b>RECEIPT OF COMMITTEE MINUTES AND WORKING PARTY/GROUP UPDATES</b>	
<b>9.1</b>	<b>Receipt of Committee Minutes</b>	<b>226</b>
<b>10.0</b>	<b>KAUPAPA Ā ROTO (BUSINESS WITH THE PUBLIC EXCLUDED)</b>	<b>258</b>
<b>10.1</b>	<b>Confirmation of CONFIDENTIAL Minutes - Council Meeting 23 March 2022 and CONFIDENTIAL Minutes - Extraordinary Council Meeting 12 April 2022</b>	
<b>10.2</b>	<b>Receipt of Committee CONFIDENTIAL Minutes</b>	
<b>10.3</b>	<b>Human Resources Report - March 2022</b>	
<b>10.4</b>	<b>Summary Report on the Kensington Crossing Redevelopment Project</b>	
<b>10.5</b>	<b>Private Equity Consideration</b>	

<p><b>ACC</b> - Accident Compensation Corporation</p> <p><b>ALGIM</b> - Association of Local Government Information Management</p> <p><b>AMA</b> - Aquaculture Management Area</p> <p><b>AMP</b> - Asset Management Plan/Activity Management Plan</p> <p><b>AP</b> - Annual Plan</p> <p><b>BOI</b> - Bay of Islands</p> <p><b>BOPRC</b> - Bay of Plenty Regional Council</p> <p><b>CAPEX</b> - Capital Expenditure (budget to purchase assets)</p> <p><b>CBEC</b> - Community, Business and Environment Centre</p> <p><b>CCO</b> - Council Controlled Organisation</p> <p><b>CCTO</b> - Council Controlled Trading Organisation</p> <p><b>CDEM</b> - Civil Defence Emergency Management</p> <p><b>CEEF</b> - Chief Executives Environment Forum</p> <p><b>CEG</b> - Co-ordinating Executive Group</p> <p><b>CEO</b> - Chief Executive Officer</p> <p><b>CIMS</b> - Co-ordinated Incident Management System (emergency management structure)</p> <p><b>CMA</b> - Coastal Marine Area</p> <p><b>CPCA</b> - Community Pest Control Areas</p> <p><b>CRI</b> - Crown Research Institute</p> <p><b>DHB</b> - District Health Board</p> <p><b>DOC</b> - Department of Conservation</p> <p><b>DP</b> - District Plan</p> <p><b>E350</b> - Extension 350 programme</p> <p><b>ECA</b> - Environmental Curriculum Award</p> <p><b>ECAN</b> - Environment Canterbury</p> <p><b>EECA</b> - Energy Efficiency Conservation Authority</p> <p><b>EF</b> - Environment Fund</p> <p><b>EMA</b> - Employers and Manufacturers Association</p> <p><b>EOC</b> - Emergency Operations Centre</p> <p><b>EPA</b> - Environmental Protection Authority</p> <p><b>ETS</b> - Emissions Trading Scheme</p> <p><b>FDE</b> - Farm Dairy Effluent</p> <p><b>FNDC</b> - Far North District Council</p> <p><b>FNHL</b> - Far North Holdings Limited</p> <p><b>FPP</b> - First Past the Post</p> <p><b>GE</b> - Genetic Engineering</p> <p><b>GIS</b> - Geographic Information System</p> <p><b>GMO</b> - Genetically Modified Organism</p> <p><b>HBRC</b> - Hawke's Bay Regional Council</p> <p><b>HEMP</b> - Hapū Environmental Management Plan</p> <p><b>Horizons</b> - Brand name of Manawatu-Wanganui Regional Council</p> <p><b>HR</b> - Human Resources</p> <p><b>HSNO</b> - Hazardous Substances &amp; New Organisms Act</p> <p><b>HSWA</b> - Health and Safety at Work Act 2015</p> <p><b>IEMP</b> - Iwi Environmental Management Plan</p> <p><b>ILGACE</b> - Iwi and Local Government Chief Executives Forum</p> <p><b>IPPC</b> - Invited Private Plan Change</p> <p><b>IRIS</b> - Integrated Regional Information System</p> <p><b>KDC</b> - Kaipara District Council</p> <p><b>KPI</b> - Key Performance Indicator</p> <p><b>LAWA</b> - Land, Air, Water Aotearoa</p> <p><b>LEA</b> - Local Electoral Act 2001</p> <p><b>LGA</b> - Local Government Act 2002</p> <p><b>LGNZ</b> - Local Government New Zealand</p> <p><b>LGOIMA</b> - Local Government Official Information &amp; Meetings Act 1987</p> <p><b>LIDAR</b> - Light detection and ranging</p> <p><b>LTI</b> - Long time injury</p> <p><b>LTP</b> - Long Term Plan</p> <p><b>MBIE</b> - Ministry of Business, Innovation &amp; Employment</p> <p><b>MFE</b> - Ministry for the Environment</p> <p><b>MFL</b> - Māori Freehold Land</p> <p><b>MHWS</b> - Mean High Water Springs</p> <p><b>MMH</b> - Marsden Maritime Holdings Limited</p> <p><b>MNZ</b> - Maritime New Zealand</p> <p><b>MOH</b> - Ministry of Health</p> <p><b>MOT</b> - Ministry of Transport</p>	<p><b>MPI</b> - Ministry for Primary Industries</p> <p><b>MSD</b> - Ministry of Social Development</p> <p><b>NCMC</b> - National Crisis Management Centre</p> <p><b>NDHB</b> - Northland District Health Board</p> <p><b>NEMA</b> - National Emergency Management Agency</p> <p><b>NES</b> - National Environmental Standards</p> <p><b>NFT</b> - Northland Forward Together</p> <p><b>NGO</b> - Non-Governmental Organisation</p> <p><b>NIF</b> - Northland Intersectoral Forum</p> <p><b>NINC</b> - Northland Inc. Limited</p> <p><b>NIWA</b> - National Institute of Water and Atmosphere</p> <p><b>NORTEG</b> - Northland Technical Advisory Group</p> <p><b>NPS</b> - National Policy Statement</p> <p><b>NZCPS</b> - New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement</p> <p><b>NZRC</b> - New Zealand Refining Company (Marsden Point)</p> <p><b>NZTA</b> - Waka Kotahi New Zealand Transport Agency</p> <p><b>NZTE</b> - New Zealand Trade and Enterprise</p> <p><b>NZWWA</b> - New Zealand Water and Wastes Association</p> <p><b>OFI</b> - Opportunity for Improvement\</p> <p><b>OPEX</b> - Operating Expenditures</p> <p><b>OSH</b> - Occupational Safety &amp; Health</p> <p><b>OTS</b> - Office of Treaty Settlements</p> <p><b>PCBU</b> - Person Conducting Business or Undertaking</p> <p><b>PGF</b> - Provincial Growth Fund</p> <p><b>PPE</b> - Personal Protective Equipment</p> <p><b>RAP</b> - Response Action Plan</p> <p><b>RBI</b> - Regional Broadband Initiative</p> <p><b>RCP</b> - Regional Coastal Plan</p> <p><b>RFI</b> - Request for Information</p> <p><b>RFP</b> - Request for Proposal</p> <p><b>RLTP</b> - Regional Land Transport Plan</p> <p><b>RMA</b> - Resource Management Act 1991</p> <p><b>RMG</b> - Resource Managers Group (Regional Councils)</p> <p><b>RMZ</b> - Riparian Management Zone</p> <p><b>ROI</b> - Return on Investment</p> <p><b>RP</b> - Regional Plan</p> <p><b>RPMP</b> - Regional Pest Management Plan</p> <p><b>RPMS</b> - Regional Pest Management Strategy</p> <p><b>RPS</b> - Regional Policy Statement</p> <p><b>RPTP</b> - Regional Public Transport Plan</p> <p><b>RRSAP</b> - Regional Road Safety Action Plan</p> <p><b>RSG</b> - Regional Sector Group</p> <p><b>RSHL</b> - Regional Software Holdings Ltd</p> <p><b>RTC</b> - Regional Transport Committee</p> <p><b>RTO</b> - Regional Tourism Organisation</p> <p><b>SIG</b> - Special Interest Group</p> <p><b>SIPO</b> - Statement of Investment Policy and Objectives</p> <p><b>SITREP</b> - Situation Report</p> <p><b>SOE</b> - State of Environment (or) State Owned Enterprise</p> <p><b>SOI</b> - Statement of Intent</p> <p><b>SOLGM</b> - Society of Local Government Managers</p> <p><b>STV</b> - Single Transferable Vote</p> <p><b>TAG</b> - Technical Advisory Group</p> <p><b>Tier 1</b> - Site level plan or response for an oil spill</p> <p><b>Tier 2</b> - Regional level plan or response to an oil spill</p> <p><b>Tier 3</b> - National level plan or response to an oil spill</p> <p><b>TLA</b> - Territorial Local Authority – City &amp; District Councils</p> <p><b>TON</b> - Top of the North (regions)</p> <p><b>TTMAC</b> - Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party</p> <p><b>TTNEAP</b> - Tai Tokerau Northland Economic Action Plan</p> <p><b>TMP</b> - Treasury Management Plan</p> <p><b>TOR</b> - Terms of Reference</p> <p><b>TPK</b> - Te Puni Kōkiri (Ministry of Maori Development)</p> <p><b>TUANZ</b> - Telecommunications Users Association of NZ</p> <p><b>UNISA</b> - Upper North Island Strategic Alliance</p> <p><b>WDC</b> - Whangarei District Council</p> <p><b>WHHIF</b> - Whangarei Harbour Health Improvement Fund</p> <p><b>WRC</b> - Waikato Regional Council</p> <p><b>WSMP</b> - Workplace Safety Management Practices</p>
--	--

# Tauāki ā roto

Tēnei au  
Tēnei mātou  
He kaikaunihera  
He kawenga i ngā whakataunga,  
i ngā tikanga  
Ki uta, ki tai  
Kia rewa ai ngā iwi katoa o Te  
Taitokerau

Haumie hui e  
TĀIKI E!

Here I am  
Here we are  
Your councillors  
The bearers of sound  
decision making power  
Reaching inland and coastal  
To uplift all peoples of  
Northland

Bring forth unity  
Tis Done!



**TITLE:** **Confirmation of Minutes - Council Meeting 23 March 2022  
and Extraordinary Council Meeting 12 April 2022**

**From:** Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist

**Authorised by:** Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist, on 21 April 2022


---


**Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation**

That the minutes of the council meeting held on 23 March 2022 and the extraordinary council meeting held on 12 April 2022 be confirmed as a true and correct record.

---

**Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga**

Attachment 1: Minutes of the council meeting - 23 March 2022 [↓](#) 

Attachment 2: Minutes of the extraordinary council meeting - 12 April 2022 [↓](#) 

Council Meeting  
23 March 2022

## Northland Regional Council Minutes

Meeting held remotely  
on Wednesday 23 March 2022, commencing at 10.30am

### Tuhinga/Present:

Chairperson, Penny Smart

Councillors:

Terry Archer

Jack Craw

Amy Macdonald

Marty Robinson

Rick Stolwerk

Joce Yeoman

### I Tae Mai/In Attendance:

#### Full Meeting

Independent Audit & Risk Advisor

Independent Financial Advisor

Tumuaki - Chief Executive Officer

Pou Taumatua - GM Corporate Services

Pou Tiaki Taiao - GM Environmental Services

Pou Whakaritenga - GM Regulatory Services

Pou Manawhakahaere – GM Governance and Engagement

Poutiaki Hāpori – GM Community Resilience

Poutiaki Pūtaiao – GM Biosecurity

Human Resources Manager

PA/Admin Support Governance and Engagement

#### Part Meeting

Finance Manager

Financial Accountant

Corporate Strategy Manager

Policy Specialist, Planning and Policy

Policy Specialist (Freshwater), Planning and Policy

Climate Change Manager

Policy Specialist, Corporate Strategy

Emergency Management Recovery Specialist

#### Secretarial Note:

- The Chair declared the meeting open at 10.31am and proceedings commenced with a karakia.
- Due to the current Covid-19 restrictions and the meeting being conducted fully remotely, proceedings were livestreamed in order to be open to the public.
- It was advised that the update from the Biosecurity and Biodiversity Working Party meeting on 23 February 2022 had been omitted from the published agenda (in relation to Item 9.2 'Working Party Updates and Chairpersons' Briefings') and had been circulated prior to the meeting.

Council Meeting  
23 March 2022

### **Ngā whakapahā/Apologies (Item 1.0)**

#### **Moved (Smart/MacDonald)**

That the apology from Councillor Blaikie for non-attendance be received.

#### **Carried**

#### **Moved (Craw/MacDonald)**

That the apology from Councillor Kitchen for non-attendance be received.

#### **Carried**

*Secretarial Note: The apology for Councillor Kitchen was addressed at Item 6.1 when it was confirmed the councillor was at an emergency call out.*

### **Nga whakapuakanga/Declarations of Conflicts of Interest (Item 2.0)**

It was advised that councillors should make declarations item-by-item as the meeting progressed.

### **Confirmation of Minutes - Council Meeting 22 February 2022 (Item 5.1)**

#### **Report from Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist**

#### **Moved (Craw/Stolwerk)**

That the minutes of the council meeting held on 22 February 2022, be confirmed as a true and correct record.

#### **Carried**

### **Receipt of Action Sheet (Item 5.2)**

#### **Report from Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist**

#### **Moved (Robinson/Macdonald)**

That the action sheet be received.

#### **Carried**

### **Financial Report to 28 February 2022 (Item 6.1)**

#### **Report from Vincent McColl, Financial Accountant**

#### **Moved (Stolwerk/Yeoman)**

That the report 'Financial Report to 28 February 2022' by Vincent McColl, Financial Accountant and dated 7 March 2022, be received.

#### **Carried**

*Secretarial Note: The Pou Taumatua - GM Corporate Services provided a verbal update which encompassed the following key points:*

- *The original financial result contained in Item 6.1 of the February council agenda presented a net surplus after transfers from/(to) reserves of \$7.26M for the year to the end of February 2022.*

Council Meeting  
23 March 2022

*When compared to the corresponding budget, this represented a \$760K better than budget variance. This result did not include any returns from council's managed fund investments.*

- *The EriksensGlobal monthly report for February was received Wednesday 16 March (after the agenda was published) and overall, the funds experienced a monthly negative return for the month of February of (\$565k). Noting this is a non-realised monthly loss.*
- *For the eight months of the financial year so far, the investment funds had now incurred a (\$118k) loss (comparison: Jan 2022 YTD was 447k positive)*
- *After adjusting the financial report to reflect the actual February losses, the YTD surplus after reserve transfers has reduced from \$7.26m to \$6.69m which now represents a variance of \$195K better than the YTD budget.*
- *As the overall YTD variance continued to be better than budget, there had been no need at this stage of the year to book any transfer from the OPEX reserve.*

### **Regional Rates Collection - update to 31 December 2021 (Item 6.2)**

**Report from Simon Crabb, Finance Manager**

**Moved (Archer/Robinson)**

That the report 'Regional Rates Collection - update to 31 December 2021' by Simon Crabb, Finance Manager and dated 2 March 2022, be received.

**Carried**

### **Councillor appointment to Waiharara Fire - Recovery Governance Group (Item 7.1)**

**Report from Jenny Calder, Emergency Management Recovery Specialist**

**Moved (Stolwerk/Archer)**

1. That the report 'Councillor appointment to Waiharara Fire - Recovery Governance Group' by Jenny Calder, Emergency Management Recovery Specialist and dated 10 March 2022, be received.
2. That council approves the appointment of a Northland Regional Council (NRC) representative onto the Councillor appointment to Waiharara Fire - Recovery Governance Group
3. That the council approves the appointment of Councillor Kitchen to represent Northland Regional Council (NRC) Councillor appointment to Waiharara Fire - Recovery Governance Group.

**Carried**

*Secretarial Note: This was a temporary arrangement for which Councillor Kitchen would not be receiving any financial assistance. Appreciation was extended to Councillor Kitchen for taking on the role.*

Council Meeting  
23 March 2022

### **Adoption of the Draft User Fees and Charges 2022/23 and approval to consult (Item 7.2)**

**Report from Robyn Broadhurst, Policy Specialist**

**Moved (Stolwerk/Yeoman)**

1. That the report 'Adoption of the Draft User Fees and Charges 2022/23 and approval to consult' by Robyn Broadhurst, Policy Specialist and dated 23 February 2022, be received.
2. That council adopts the Statement of Proposal and the Draft User Fees and Charges 2022/23 (*included as Attachment 1 pertaining to Item 7.2 of the 23 March 2022 council agenda*) for the purposes of consultation, pursuant to section 150 of the LGA, and that this be carried out in conjunction with consultation on the Annual Plan 2022/23.
3. That council delegates to the Group Manager – Corporate Services the authority to make any necessary minor formatting, typographical and administrative changes to the Statement of Proposal and Draft User Fees and Charges 2022/23 prior to formal public consultation.

**Carried**

### **Adoption of the Annual Plan 2022/23 Supporting Information for consultation (Item 7.3)**

**Report from Robyn Broadhurst, Policy Specialist**

**Moved (Yeoman/Macdonald)**

1. That the report 'Adoption of the Annual Plan 2022/23 Supporting Information for consultation' by Robyn Broadhurst, Policy Specialist and dated 23 February 2022, be received.
2. That council adopts the Annual Plan 2022/23 Supporting Information 'Annual Plan 2022/23 Supporting information document' (*included as Attachment 1 pertaining to Item 7.3 of the 23 March 2022 council agenda*), for consultation, pursuant to sections 95 and 95A of the LGA.
3. That council delegates to the Group Manager – Corporate Services the authority to make any necessary minor formatting, typographical and administrative changes to the supporting information prior to formal public consultation.

**Carried**

### **Adoption of the Annual Plan 2022/23 Consultation Document and approval to consult (Item 7.4)**

**Report from Robyn Broadhurst, Policy Specialist**

**Moved (Stolwerk/Yeoman)**

1. That the report 'Adoption of the Annual Plan 2022/23 Consultation Document and approval to consult' by Robyn Broadhurst, Policy Specialist and dated 23 February 2022, be received.



Council Meeting  
23 March 2022

2. That council adopts and approves the Annual Plan 2022/22 Consultation Document *(included as Attachment 1 pertaining to Item 7.4 of the 23 March 2022 council agenda)* for consultation pursuant to sections 82, 95 and 95A of the Local Government Act 2002.
3. That council delegates to the Group Manager – Corporate Services the authority to make any necessary minor formatting, typographical, and administrative changes to the Consultation Document prior to formal public consultation.

**Carried**

### **Strategic Intent 2021-2040 - Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party (Item 7.5)**

**Report from Auriole Ruka, Pou Manawhakahaere - GM Governance and Engagement; Jonathan Gibbard, Pou Tiaki Taiao – Group Manager Environmental Services and Ben Lee, Planning and Policy Manager**

**Moved (Craw/Robinson)**

1. That the report 'Strategic Intent 2021-2040 - Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party' by Auriole Ruka, Pou Manawhakahaere - GM Governance and Engagement; Jonathan Gibbard, Pou Tiaki Taiao – Group Manager Environmental Services and Ben Lee, Planning and Policy Manager and dated 7 March 2022, be received.

**Carried**

**It was further moved (Craw/Robinson)**

2. That council endorse:
  - a. The Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party (TTMAC) Strategic Intent 2021-2040 be acknowledged and recognised as the intent for TTMAC as it reflects the kaupapa of a Tiriti based partnership and the key 'whainga' or outcomes as articulated by the tangata whenua members of TTMAC.
  - b. Setting up a subgroup to develop a council strategic intent and implementation plan with the objective of both being endorsed by TTMAC and adopted by council.
  - c. That council confirm three councillors; Cr Robinson, Chair Smart, Cr Macdonald, with Cr Craw as a reserve, to be on the subgroup making recommendations on the Council Strategic Intent and implementation plan with the objective of endorsement and adoption.
  - d. TTMAC tangata whenua members Pita Tipene, Lynette Wharerau, Nora Rameka, Mira Norris and Mike Kake to be on the subgroup.
  - e. Commissioning consultants to assist the subgroup with the development of the implementation plan and review of the Strategic Intent.

**Carried**

Council Meeting  
23 March 2022

### **Tangata Whenua Water Advisory Group: Terms of Reference and Budget (Item 7.6)**

**Report from Alison Newell, Policy Specialist**

#### **Moved (Yeoman/Robinson)**

1. That the report 'Tangata Whenua Water Advisory Group: Terms of Reference and Budget' by Alison Newell, Policy Specialist and dated 18 November 2021, be received.
2. That council approve the Terms of Reference for the Tangata Whenua Water Advisory Group.
3. That council approve bringing forward \$111,000 from 2022-23 Te Mana o Te Wai budget via the Equalisation Reserve for implementing the Tangata Whenua Water Advisory Group workplan, with any unspent funds remaining at the end of the financial year being carried over.
4. That Lynette Wharerau be appointed as a proxy for the three TTMAC representatives for the Tangata Whenua Water Advisory Group.

**Carried**

### **NRC & Marsden Maritime Holdings (MMH) MOU (Item 7.7)**

**Report from Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services**

#### **Moved (Stolwerk/Craw)**

1. That the report 'NRC & Marsden Maritime Holdings(MMH) MOU' by Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services and dated 1 March 2022, be received.
2. That council supports the MOU (*included as Attachment 1 pertaining to Item 7.7 of the 23 March 2022 council agenda*) between NRC and MMH relating to selection, nomination, and remuneration of Directors of MMH.
3. That the NRC Chair be the council signatory to the MOU.

**Carried**

### **Equalisation Reserve Floor (Item 7.8)**

**Report from Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services**

#### **Moved (Stolwerk/Craw)**

1. That the report 'Equalisation Reserve Floor' by Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services and dated 1 March 2022, be received.
2. That council supports the introduction of a floor to the Equalisation Reserve of a closing balance of \$250,000 in any given year.

**Carried**

Council Meeting  
23 March 2022

### **Renewable Energy Zones. (Supplementary Item 7.9)**

**Report from Victoria Harwood, Pou Tiaki Hapori - GM Community Resilience**

**Moved (Macdonald/Stolwerk)**

1. That as permitted under section 46A(7) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 the supplementary report 'Renewable Energy Zones.' by Victoria Harwood, Pou Tiaki Hapori - GM Community Resilience and dated 10 March 2022, be received.
2. That the Draft Joint Submission on Renewable Energy Zones (*included as Attachment 2 pertaining to Item 7.9 of the 23 March 2022 supplementary council agenda*) is approved by council.
3. That the council delegates to the Chair the authority to finalise the submission in conjunction with the Far North, Whangarei, and Kaipara district council mayors, to reflect any further elected member feedback.

**Carried**

### **Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee Terms of Reference (Item 7.10)**

**Report from Tom Fitzgerald, Climate Change Manager**

**Moved (Macdonald/Robinson)**

1. That the report 'Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee Terms of Reference' by Tom Fitzgerald, Climate Change Manager, and dated 16 March 2022, be received.
2. That the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee Terms of Reference (*included as Attachment 1 pertaining to Item 7.10 of the 23 March 2022 council agenda*) be adopted.

**Carried**

*Secretary Note: A report regarding the discharge of committees and working parties to be brought to the April 2022 council meeting.*

### **Health and safety report (Item 8.1)**

**Report from Beryl Steele, Human Resources Manager**

**Moved (Yeoman/Macdonald)**

That the report 'Health and safety report' by Beryl Steele, Human Resources Manager and dated 3 March 2022, be received.

**Carried**

### **Chair's Report to Council (Item 8.2)**

**Report from Penny Smart, Chair**

**Moved (Smart/Robinson)**

That the report 'Chair's Report to Council' by Penny Smart, Chair and dated 7 March 2022, be received.

**Carried**

Council Meeting  
23 March 2022

### **Chief Executive's Report to Council (Item 8.3)**

**Report from Malcolm Nicolson, Tumuaki - Chief Executive Officer**

#### **Moved (Archer/Craw)**

That the report 'Chief Executive's Report to Council' by Malcolm Nicolson, Tumuaki - Chief Executive Officer and dated 28 February 2022, be received.

#### **Carried**

*Secretarial Note: The following corrections were noted to the Chief Executive Officer's Report to Council:*

- *The Pou Tiaki Taiao - Group Manager Environmental Services, had been appointed as the new Land Management Special Interest Group (SIG) Sponsor*
- *The table on p 248 of the agenda should be entitled Bus Link stats for February 2022 (revenue ex GST), not January 2022.*

### **Legislative compliance reporting for the period 1 July - 31 December 2021 (Item 8.4)**

**Report from Kyla Carlier, Corporate Strategy Manager**

#### **Moved (Yeoman/Stolwerk)**

That the report 'Legislative compliance reporting for the period 1 July - 31 December 2021' by Kyla Carlier, Corporate Strategy Manager and dated 23 February 2022, be received.

#### **Carried**

### **Receipt of Committee Minutes (Item 9.1)**

**Report from Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist**

#### **Moved (Macdonald/Yeoman)**

That the unconfirmed minutes of the:

- Kaipara Moana Remediation Joint Committee – 21 February 2022.  
be received.

#### **Carried**

*Secretarial Note:*

- *The record of actions pertaining to the Water and Land Working Party - 1 March 2022 and Planning and Regulatory Working Party - 1 March 2022 had incorrectly been included in Item 9.1 and were addressed appropriately as part of Item 9.2, 'Working Party Updates and Chairpersons' Briefings'.*
- *Representatives from the Kaipara Moana Remediation Joint Committee provided a verbal update on key priorities and workstreams.*

Council Meeting  
23 March 2022

## Working Party Updates and Chairpersons' Briefings (Item 9.2)

Report from Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist

Moved (Smart/Robinson)

That the report 'Working Party Updates and Chairpersons' Briefings' be received.

Carried

*Secretarial Note: Item 9.2 also included an update from Biosecurity and Biodiversity Working Party meeting held on 23 February 2022 which had been omitted from the agenda and circulated separately.*

## Kaupapa ā Roto/Business with Public Excluded (Item 10.0)

Moved (Smart/Stolwerk)

1. That the public be excluded from the proceedings of this meeting to consider confidential matters.
2. That the general subject of the matters to be considered whilst the public is excluded, the reasons for passing this resolution in relation to this matter, and the specific grounds under the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution, are as follows:

Item No.	Item Issue	Reasons/Grounds
10.1	Confirmation of Confidential Minutes - Council Meeting 22 February 2022	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, as stated in the open section of the meeting -.
10.2	HR Report	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, the withholding of which is necessary to protect the privacy of natural persons, including that of deceased natural persons s7(2)(a).
10.3	Investment Property Leaseholder Exit Discussions	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, the withholding of which is necessary to protect information where the making available of the information would be likely unreasonably to prejudice the commercial position of the person who supplied or who is the subject of the information s7(2)(b)(ii), the withholding of which is necessary to enable council to carry out, without prejudice or disadvantage, commercial activities s7(2)(h) and the withholding of which is necessary to enable council to carry on, without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations) s7(2)(i).

3. That the Independent Advisors be permitted to stay during business with the public excluded.

Carried

## Whakamutunga (Conclusion)

The meeting concluded at 11.55am

Extraordinary Council Meeting  
12 April 2022

## Northland Regional Council Minutes

Meeting held remotely via audio visual link  
on Tuesday 12 April 2022, commencing at 10.00am

### **Tuhinga/Present:**

Chairperson, Penny Smart

Councillors:

Terry Archer

Justin Blaikie

Jack Craw

Colin Kitchen

Amy Macdonald

Marty Robinson

Rick Stolwerk

Joce Yeoman

### **I Tae Mai/In Attendance:**

#### **Full Meeting**

Sheffield Search Executive Director

Specialist Financial Advisor

Tumuaki - Chief Executive Officer

Governance Specialist

The Chair declared the meeting open at 10.02am and proceedings commenced with a karakia.

### **Ngā whakapahā/Apologies (Item 1.0)**

#### **Moved (Smart/Stolwerk)**

That the apologies from the Specialist Advisor for non-attendance be received.

**Carried**

### **Nga whakapuakanga/Declarations of Conflicts of Interest (Item 2.0)**

It was advised that councillors should make declarations item-by-item as the meeting progressed.

Extraordinary Council Meeting  
12 April 2022

## **Kaupapa ā Roto/Business with Public Excluded (Item 5.0)**

### **Moved (Smart/Craw)**

1. That the public be excluded from the proceedings of this meeting to consider confidential matters.
2. That the general subject of the matters to be considered whilst the public is excluded, the reasons for passing this resolution in relation to this matter, and the specific grounds under the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution, are as follows:

Item No.	Item Issue	Reasons/Grounds
5.1	Chief Executive Appointment	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, the withholding of which is necessary to protect the privacy of natural persons, including that of deceased natural persons s7(2)(a). And to enable any local authority holding the information to carry on, without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations) s 7(2)(i).

3. That the Specialist Advisors and Sheffield Search Executive Director be permitted to stay during business with the public excluded.

**Carried**

## **Whakamutunga (Conclusion)**

The meeting concluded at 10.18am.

**TITLE:**                   **Receipt of Action Sheet**

**From:**                   Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist

**Authorised by:**       Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist, on 19 April 2022

---

### **Whakarāpopototanga / Executive summary**

The purpose of this report is to enable the meeting to receive the current action sheet.


---

### **Nga mahi tutohutia / Recommendation**

That the action sheet be received.

---

### **Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga**

Attachment 1: Council Action Sheet - April 2022 [↓](#) 



**Council Actions April 2022**

<b>Id</b>	<b>Meeting</b>	<b>Target Date</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Request Details</b>	<b>Most Recent Comment</b>
6425	Council 22/02/2022	26/04/22	Working Party Updates and Chairpersons' Briefings	That consideration be given to a report to council to confirm funding to progress the Hokianga Harbour Environmental Business Case	Item included in the April 2022 council agenda (refer to Item 7.4).
6439	Council 23/03/2022	26/04/22	Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee Terms of Reference	That a report be included in the April council meeting agenda addressing the discharge of subordinate bodies at the end of the triennium.	Item included in the April 2022 council agenda (refer to Item 7.1)

**TITLE: Financial Report to 31 March 2022**

**From:** Vincent McColl, Financial Accountant

**Authorised by** Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services, on 14  
**Group Manager/s:** April 2022

---

**Whakarāpopototanga / Executive summary**

This report is to inform council of the year to date (YTD) financial result to March 2022. Council has achieved a YTD surplus after transfers to and from reserves of \$6.80M, which is \$1.31M favourable to budget (February YTD per agenda \$760K and then updated verbally at the meeting to \$195K after incorporating February investment losses). No gains have been accrued for March as it is expected to have little movement in either gains or losses for the majority of fund managers. An update on fund performance to the end of March will be provided to the April council meeting.

---

**Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation**

That the report 'Financial Report to 31 March 2022' by Vincent McColl, Financial Accountant and dated 11 April 2022, be received.

---

**Background/Tuhinga**

SUMMARY OPERATING RESULTS			
	000's ACTUAL YTD	000's BUDGET YTD	000's VARIANCE YTD
Revenue (including other gains)	\$ 50,888	\$ 52,507	\$ (1,619)
Expenditure	\$ 39,204	\$ 42,861	\$ 3,657
<b>NET (COST)/SURPLUS BEFORE TRANSFERS FROM/(TO) RESERVES</b>	<b>\$ 11,684</b>	<b>\$ 9,646</b>	<b>\$ 2,038</b>
Transfer From (To) Special Reserves	\$ (4,896)	\$ (4,172)	\$ (724)
<b>NET (COST)/SURPLUS AFTER TRANSFERS FROM/(TO) RESERVES</b>	<b>\$ 6,788</b>	<b>\$ 5,475</b>	<b>\$ 1,314</b>

## Revenue

Year to date revenue is \$50.89M, which is (\$1.62M) or (3.1%) below budget.

YTD REVENUE VARIANCE INDICATORS BY REVENUE TYPE			
	FAV / (UNFAV)		Commentary
	\$	%	
Rates	\$57,123	0.2%	
User Fees and Sundry	\$337,971	9.2%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Higher than budgeted monitoring fees of \$287K</li> <li>Higher than budgeted mooring fees of \$88K</li> <li>Higher than budgeted tenant recoveries relating to Kensington Crossing of \$160K offset with higher than budgeted tenant costs</li> </ul> Offset by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lower than budgeted bus fare box income of \$280K</li> </ul>
Grants and Subsidies	\$195,508	1.6%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Unbudgeted subsidies on a weather radar system of \$50K</li> <li>Higher than budgeted subsidies on flood infrastructure work of \$540K offset with higher than budgeted transfers to special reserves</li> <li>Higher than budgeted subsidies for NTA costs of \$110K</li> </ul> Offset by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lower than budgeted subsidies on the SHARP project of \$138K offset with lower than budgeted expenditure.</li> <li>Lower than budgeted subsidies on FIF projects of \$69K partially offset with lower than budgeted expenditure.</li> <li>Lower than budgeted NZTA subsidies of \$50K due to lower than budgeted expenditure.</li> <li>Lower than budgeted biosecurity project subsidies offset by lower than budgeted expenditure of \$143K</li> </ul>
Investment Interest Income	\$125,914	96.1%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Unbudgeted interest on Kensington Crossing fitout payments of \$10K</li> <li>Unbudgeted interest on the REL loan of \$40K offset with a impairment provision</li> <li>Higher than budgeted internal interest of \$54K due to not yet having completed enough floodworks to establish another tranche of external borrowing.</li> </ul>
Investment Property Income	\$138,599	6.3%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Higher than budgeted rent income on Kensington Crossing properties due to the sale of these properties occurring later than budgeted.</li> <li>Higher than budgeted rent income on Council's properties due to favourable rent reviews and some now tenanted properties that were budgeted as untenanted.</li> </ul>
Dividend Income	\$719,644	23.2%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Actual dividends of 17.25 cents per share are higher than the budgeted 14 cents per share</li> </ul>
Long Term Fund Gains	(\$2,589,102)	(95.7%)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Actual February YTD returns of 1.0% are lower than the budgeted 4.15% (6.22% annualised).</li> </ul>
Short Term Fund Gains	(\$604,893)	(163.0%)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Actual February YTD returns of (0.7%) are lower than the budgeted 2.52% (3.78% annualised).</li> </ul>
<b>Total</b>	<b>(\$1,619,235)</b>	<b>(3.1%)</b>	

### Expenditure

Year to date expenditure is \$39.20M, which is \$3.66M or 8.5% below budget.

YTD EXPENDITURE VARIANCE INDICATORS BY COUNCIL ACTIVITY					
		FAV / (UNFAV)	Commentary	Offset by:	
				Subsidies	Reserves
					Not offset FAV / (UNFAV)
Regulatory Services	\$46,624	1.6%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lower than budgeted salaries due to recruitment issues</li> <li>Higher than budgeted expenditure relating to consent applications and monitoring</li> <li>Other small accumulated variances within this group</li> </ul>	(\$140K)	\$190K
Environmental Services	\$1,352,220	16.4%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lower than budgeted salaries due to recruitment issues</li> <li>Lower than budgeted expenditure of the SHARP project</li> <li>Lower than budgeted expenditure on FIF projects</li> <li>Lower than budgeted expenditure on KMR operating grants</li> <li>Lower than budgeted environment fund grants due to timing of funded works being completed</li> <li>Other small accumulated variances within this group</li> </ul>	\$35K \$137K \$216K	(\$3K) \$284K \$0K \$98K \$88K
Biosecurity	\$751,227	10.7%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lower than budgeted salaries due to recruitment issues</li> <li>Lower than budgeted PF works</li> <li>Other small accumulated variances within this group</li> </ul>	\$82K	\$399K \$165K \$105K
Governance and Engagement	\$398,643	7.1%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lower than budgeted salaries due to recruitment issues</li> <li>Lower than budgeted council meeting costs predominantly relating to not having in person meetings</li> <li>Other small accumulated variances within this group</li> </ul>		\$247K \$85K \$67K
Community Resilience	\$775,737	9.0%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lower than budgeted salaries due to recruitment issues</li> <li>Lower than budgeted flood scheme maintenance and river clearance works due to weather related delays. This is expected to catch up by year end.</li> <li>Lower than budgeted interest on flood schemes due to the timing of capital works</li> <li>Lower than budgeted NTA costs</li> <li>Lower than budgeted Tsunami siren operational costs</li> <li>Lower than budgeted advertising, promotional, and printing costs</li> <li>Lower than budgeted climate change grant costs. This is expected to be caught up later in the year.</li> <li>Other small accumulated variances within this group</li> </ul>	\$48K \$48K	\$193K \$69K \$49K \$41K \$20K \$54K
Corporate Services	\$510,417	5.8%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lower than budgeted salaries due to recruitment issues</li> <li>Lower than budgeted enterprise system costs</li> <li>Higher than budgeted internal interest expenses relating to higher special reserve balances than budgeted</li> <li>Other small accumulated variances within this group</li> </ul>		\$113K (\$50K) \$0K
CEO Office	(\$178,038)	(10.9%)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Higher than budgeted tenant costs relating to Kensington Crossing</li> <li>Other small accumulated variances within this group</li> </ul>	(\$160K)	(\$70K) \$52K
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$3,656,831</b>	<b>8.5%</b>		<b>\$266K</b>	<b>\$1,133K</b> <b>\$2,258K</b>

### ***Salary Variances***

Across council there is a \$1.19M (February YTD: \$1.07M) favourable salaries variance predominantly due to the time to complete recruitment of positions identified in the LTP (Long Term Plan) and some vacancies already present at the end of 2020/21. Of this \$117K (February YTD: \$82K) is related to subsidised work programmes and \$361K (February YTD: \$242K) relates to unbudgeted KMR staff salaries offset by budgeted grant expenditure. The total salaries variance is partially offset by \$294K (February YTD: \$218K) of annual leave earned not taken.

### ***Transfers to reserves***

For the year to date there has been a net transfer **to** reserves of \$4.90M compared to a budgeted net transfer **to** reserves of \$4.17M. This is predominantly due to:

- \$580K more than budgeted transfers to flood infrastructure river reserves due to higher than budgeted subsidies for capital flood works.
- \$193K more than budgeted transfers to river reserves due to lower than budgeted YTD expenditure relating to maintenance and river clearance works not occurring when budgeted and higher than budgeted subsidies on flood schemes.
- \$876K lower than budgeted transfers to externally managed funds due to lower than budgeted gains
- \$66K more than budgeted transfers to bus reserves due to lower than budgeted YTD expenditure.
- \$518K more than budgeted transfers to the Kaipara Moana Remediation reserve due to the Kaipara Maurikura not yet requiring funding this financial year.
- \$431K lower than budgeted transfers from the enterprise system reserve representing lower costs than budgeted at this point in the project.

### ***Capital Expenditure***

Capital expenditure of \$3.77M is lower than the budget of \$4.08M due to the timing of expenditure on numerous capital works programmes.

---

### ***Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga***

Nil

**TITLE: Continuity over council recess**

**From:** Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist

**Authorised by** Auriole Ruka, Pou Manawhakahaere - GM Governance and Engagement, on  
**Group Manager/s:** 19 April 2022

---

**Executive summary/Whakarāpopototanga**

This report seeks to address two key matters:

- Ensure arrangements are in place to enable urgent decisions to be made if required during council recess (the time between the current council going out of office and the swearing in of the incoming council following the local body elections which will be held on Saturday 8 October 2022).
- Seek a council resolution that certain subordinate bodies are not discharged following the triennial election.

---

**Recommendations:**

1. That the report 'Continuity over council recess' by Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist and dated 13 April 2022, be received.
2. That in the period between the day following the Electoral Officer's declaration until the new council is sworn in for the 2022-2025 triennium, the council delegates to the Chief Executive Officer the authority to make decisions over and above the Chief Executive's normal delegations in respect of urgent matters, except those responsibilities, duties and powers specifically excluded in terms of clause 32(1)(a)-(h) of Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002.
3. That any instances where the Chief Executive Officer exercises powers, in accordance with 2 above, shall be presented to the first ordinary meeting of the incoming council for ratification.
4. That, for the avoidance of doubt the following subordinate bodies be deemed not to be discharged on the coming into office of the council elected at the October 2022 triennial elections;
  - i. The Civil Defence Emergency Management Group (in accordance with section 12(2) of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002);
  - ii. Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē Beach Board (in accordance with section 62(2)(b) of the Te Hiku Claims Settlement Bill); and
  - iii. The Kaipara Harbour Remediation Committee, the Joint Regional Economic Development Committee and the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee (in accordance with their Terms of Reference adopted by all founding members).
5. That the Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party (TTMAC) be deemed not to be discharged on the coming into the office of the council elected at the October 2022 triennial elections.

5. That the Māori Technical Advisory Group (MTAG) and its members be deemed not to be discharged on the coming into office of the council elected at the October 2022 triennial elections; subject to endorsement by TTMAC at its 12 May 2022 meeting.
6. That the Tangata Whenua Water Advisory Group (TWWAG) and its members (including the three TTMAC representatives) be deemed not to be discharged on the coming into office of the council elected at the October 2022 triennial elections; subject to endorsement by TTMAC at its 12 May 2022 meeting .

## Options

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
1(a)	Delegate authority to the Chief Executive Officer to make decisions in respect of urgent matters during the council recess period	Ensures measures are in place in the event an urgent decision is required during this time.	Nil
1(b)	Do not delegate authority to the Chief Executive	Nil	If an urgent matter arises during the council recess period there are no measures in place to address it.

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
2(a)	Confirm the continuation of the subordinate bodies listed in the recommendations.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provides certainty that these groups will continue until such time the new council has confirmed its governance structure.</li> <li>Ensures ongoing workstreams/projects are not stalled.</li> </ul>	Nil
2(b)	Do not confirm the continuation of the subordinate bodies listed in the recommendations.	Nil	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Potential confusion as to the status of these groups through the election period.</li> <li>Potentially stalls the ongoing work by these groups.</li> </ul>

The staff's recommended options are 1(a) and 2(a).

---

## Considerations:

### 1. Significance and engagement

This is a purely administrative matter, hence in relation to section 79 of the Local Government Act 2002, is deemed not significant.

However, it is noted that if these measures were not in place and an emergency occurred or an urgent decision was required during the council recess period, the consequences could be considerable.

### 2. Policy, risk management and legislative compliance

This report complies with Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act in terms of:

- The ability for a local authority to delegate certain functions; and
- The ability for a local authority to resolve not to discharge a committee, subcommittee or other subordinate decision making body following a triennial general election.

If the resolutions contained within the report are approved by council it minimises its exposure to risk.

Being a purely administrative matter, Environmental Impact, Community Views, Māori Impact Statement, Financial Implications and Implementation Issues are not applicable.

---

## Background/Tuhinga

### *Urgent decisions during council recess*

The current council can make urgent decisions from election day (Saturday 8 October 2022) until the Electoral Officer's declaration of the results of the election (anticipated on Thursday 13 October 2022 or as soon as practicable). However, the new council cannot act until councillors have made their statutory declarations at the inaugural council meeting (provisionally 25 October 2022).

The council is therefore in recess between the current council going out of office and the swearing in of the incoming council.

Standard 'best practice' for local authorities is to authorise the Chief Executive Officer to exercise the powers of the council during the recess (except those powers expressly excluded from delegation by Clause 32(1)(a) – (h) of Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002, or those delegated to an undischarged subordinate decision making body). It is expected that the Chief Executive Officer would exercise these powers only for matters requiring formal council approval, but no significant political debate.

Any use of the Chief Executive Officer's delegation, outside of normal delegations, will be reported to the first ordinary meeting of the incoming council.

### *Continuity of council business*

Clause 30(7) of Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002 states '*A committee, subcommittee, or other subordinate decision-making body is, unless the local authority resolves otherwise, deemed to be discharged on the coming into office of the members of the local authority elected or appointed at, or following, the triennial general election ...*'.

### **Statutory and Joint Committees**

It is important to note that:



- The continuation of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Group and Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē Board is set in legislation and not at the discretion of council. The relevant sections of legislation are 12(2) of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002 and 62(2)(b) of the Te Hiku Claims Settlement Bill.
- The continuation of the Kaipara Moana Remediation Committee, the Joint Regional Economic Development Committee and the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee was stipulated in their Terms of Reference which were adopted by each of the founding members.
- Section 105 of the Land Transport Management Act 2003 states that ‘As soon as practicable after each triennial election, every regional council must establish a regional transport committee’ and is therefore disestablished at the end of the triennium by law.

### ***Non-decision making subordinate bodies***

Although not technically decision making bodies, for the avoidance of any doubt, a recommendation is sought from council for the continued activity relating to its key subordinate bodies (as below).

It should be noted that such resolutions will not limit the new council from appointing different members, amending the Terms of Reference or disestablishing subordinate bodies when establishing its governance structure for the 2022-25 triennium.

### ***Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party (TTMAC)***

Although TTMAC has no delegated authority to make decisions it is recommended that council resolves that it not be discharged at the end of the triennium, for the following reasons:

- TTMAC has been building momentum since it was first established in 2013 and it has confirmed its Strategic Intent 2021 – 2040 giving it a clear focus for the future. It would be disappointing to lose this traction.
- The membership of TTMAC is broad consisting of twenty-one appointed iwi and hapū members from Taitokerau Māori (one representative per iwi and hapū). A strategic review was undertaken of TTMAC membership at the beginning of the triennium to ensure Te Taitokerau was well represented which took considerable time and effort. This new configuration has worked well and remains fit for purpose
- There is nothing preventing the new council from re-configuring or disestablishing TTMAC when it sets its governance structure. However, if the current council resolves that it will not be disestablished then it sends a clear message and recommendation for consideration as part of this process.

It is important to note that if TTMAC is not disestablished and the new council does decide that it continues, then all members would need to be re-mandated to ensure they continue to represent their respective iwi or hapu.

### ***Māori Technical Advisory Group (MTAG)***

MTAG consists of non-elected members and has provided meaningful technical input into a broad range of council workstreams. At present some of the key areas include the Draft NRC Freshwater Framework, Mapping ONLs in the CMA, Coastal Occupation Charging, Te ao Māori framework – climate change and Te Tiriti Health Checks.

In the period between the outgoing council and establishment of the new governance structure, it would be beneficial for MTAG to continue to have input into council processes and technical

workstreams, especially given the raft of changes facing local government. This is also important given that there may be some downtime before the new council confirms its governance structure and the re-mandating process for TTMAC (if it continues) is complete.

Being a 'subsidiary' of TTMAC, endorsement will be sought from TTMAC for the continuation of MTAG at the 12 May 2022 meeting.

### ***Tangata Whenua Water Advisory Group (TWWAG)***

Council established the Tangata Whenua Water Advisory Group (TWWAG) to work with council to develop the freshwater plan change required by the National Policy Statement on Freshwater Management (2020) (NPS-FM). The members of TWWAG were selected based on their professional and personal expertise relating to water management in Te Taitokerau. It is also important to note that three TTMAC representatives are members of this group and its Terms of Reference require at least one of these to be present for a quorum.

The timeline for this piece of work is notably challenging in order to notify the proposed freshwater plan change by April 2024.

The Terms of Reference for the Advisory Group imply but are not explicit that it will not be discharged (refer to the extract below). However, for the avoidance of any doubt council is requested to confirm its continuation.

#### **8. Te Wahanga | Term of appointment**

The term of appointment will be from December 2020 until such time as council publicly notifies its proposed freshwater quality plan change. The term of appointment can be less if a member:

- Resigns; or
- Misses three consecutive meetings or is requested to leave (see 6. above), or
- TW-WAG is disbanded.

The life-span TW-WAG may be extended at the discretion of council, and all members invited to continue with a revised Terms of Reference as appropriate.

Again given that TWWAG is a 'subsidiary' of TTMAC, endorsement will be sought from TTMAC for the continuation of TWWAG at the 12 May 2022 meeting.

### ***Collaborative Community Engagement Groups***

Council's Collaborative Community Engagement Groups include the Catchment Working Groups and River Working Groups. These are external to council's governance structure and are not included within the scope of this report.

---

## **Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga**

Nil

**TITLE: 2022 Local Body Triennial Elections**

**From:** Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist

**Authorised by** Auriole Ruka, Pou Manawhakahaere - GM Governance and Engagement, on  
**Group Manager:** 19 April 2022

---

**Executive summary/Whakarāpopototanga**

The triennial local body election will be held by postal voting from Friday 16 September 2022, culminating in Election Day on Saturday 8 October 2022.

This report seeks to:

- i. Outline key election dates;
- ii. Provide the opportunity for council to choose by resolution the order of candidate names appearing on voting documents; and
- iii. Familiarise councillors with pre-election protocols during the three month pre-election period.

---

**Recommendations:**

1. That the report '2022 Local Body Triennial Elections' by Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist and dated 30 March 2022, be received.
2. That the report '2022 Triennial Election' by Dale Ofoske, NRC Electoral Officer, and dated 10 March 2022, be received.
3. That the 'Local Authority Elections 2022 – Election Protocols for Elected Members' be noted.
4. That council resolves for the 2022 triennial election to adopt the alphabetical order of candidate names on voting documents (*in accordance with Regulation 31 of the Local Electoral Regulations 2001*).

Options

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
1	Random Order	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Although there is no compelling evidence that candidates being listed first are more likely to be elected; it prevents any doubt in the process.</li><li>NRC will be consistent with KDC on voting documents.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>May cause confusion amongst voters as they compare an alphabetical candidate handbook with the randomised ballot paper.</li><li>Possible voter criticism/confusion as specific candidate names are not easily found, particularly where there are many candidates.</li></ul>

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NRC will be inconsistent with FNDC on voting documents.</li> </ul>
2	Pseudo-Random Order	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Although there is no compelling evidence that candidates being listed first are more likely to be elected; it prevents any doubt in the process.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>May cause confusion amongst voters as they compare an alphabetical candidate handbook with the pseudo-randomised ballot paper.</li> <li>Possible voter criticism/confusion as specific candidate names are not easily found, particularly where there are many candidates.</li> <li>NRC will be inconsistent with both KDC and FNDC on voting documents.</li> </ul>
3	Alphabetical Order of surname	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Voters are easily able to find candidate names for whom they wish to vote for.</li> <li>The order of candidates on the voting documents matches the order of candidates listed in the candidate directory that accompanies voting documents.</li> <li>NRC will be consistent with FNDC on voting documents.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NRC will be inconsistent with KDC on voting documents.</li> </ul>

The staff's recommended option is Option 3: Alphabetical Order.

## Considerations

### 1. Significance and engagement

In relation to section 79 of the Local Government Act 2002, this decision is considered to be of low significance given it is an administrative matter and part of normal day to day operations of council.

### 2. Policy, risk management and legislative compliance

This report complies with section 31 of the Local Electoral Regulations 2001 which provides the opportunity for council to choose by resolution the order of candidate names appearing

on voting documents from the three options; alphabetical order of surname, pseudo-random order or random order.

Being a purely administrative matter, Environmental Impact, Community Views, Māori Impact Statement, Financial Implications and Implementation Issues are not applicable.

---

### **Background/Tuhinga**

Planning is well underway for the 2022 triennial local body elections. Dale Ofoske of Independent Election Services has been reappointed as the Electoral Officer for the Northland Regional Council. A report from the Electoral Officer is included as **Attachment 1** which outlines the election process and also provides a timetable and fact sheet (pages 7 and 8 of the report, respectively).

### ***Raising awareness***

Voter turnout in local elections has been declining since the 1980s. In 2019, voter turnout nationally was just 41.7 percent (45.56% in Northland). This year Local Government New Zealand and Taituarā (previously known as the Society of Local Government Managers – SOLGM) are joining forces to deliver the Vote 2022 campaign; the aim of which is to lift nationwide voter turnout in local elections, increase people's engagement with their local council and ultimately have local government elected by a majority of New Zealanders.

In tandem, the four Northland councils are again working together to provide a regional campaign specifically tailored for Te Taitokerau.

### ***Order of candidate names on voting documents***

Regulation 31 of the Local Electoral Regulations 2001 provides the opportunity for council to choose by resolution the order of candidate names appearing on the voting documents from three options – alphabetical, pseudo-random or random. If no resolution is made by council the default position is alphabetical order.

Of interest, FNDC has resolved to retain the alphabetical option for the 2022 local body elections, KDC has resolved to adopt random and WDC is yet to consider the matter. For the last five triennial elections (2007, 2010, 2013, 2016 and 2019) NRC resolved to adopt the alphabetical listing of names.

The Electoral Officer's report (pages 4 and 5) provides greater detail on each option but in summary:

- Random Order – all candidate names are randomly selected by computer and the order of surnames is different on every voting paper.
- Pseudo-Random Order – the order of candidate names is randomly selected and appear on all voting documents in that order.
- Alphabetical Order of surname – candidates are simply listed alphabetically by surname and is the order traditionally used in local authority and parliamentary elections.

To note, there is no cost difference between the three options.

### ***Pre-election period***

All candidates (whether current elected members or not) are impacted by the three month 'pre-election period' which comes into effect on 8 July 2022. This period is the subject of the good practice advice 'Communications in the pre-election period' (accessible via <https://www.lgnz.co.nz/assets/Uploads/Pre-election-communications-2021.pdf>) issued by Local

Government New Zealand and Taituarā and peer reviewed by legal advisors from the Office of the Auditor General (OAG) and the Department of Internal Affairs (DIA).


Council's protocols for candidates during the pre-election period have also been reviewed and are provided as **Attachment 2**. The purpose of this document is to provide greater clarity, guidance and direction for both candidates and council during the pre-election period.

Members are encouraged to be familiar with both documents and staff are available to discuss these at any time.

---

### **Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga**

Attachment 1: Electoral Officer's Report - March 2022 [↓](#) 

Attachment 2: Pre-election protocols for elected members [↓](#) 

Election Services  
Level 2, 198 Federal Street, Auckland  
PO Box 5135, Victoria Street West  
Auckland 1142  
Phone: 64 9 973 5212  
Email: [info@electionservices.co.nz](mailto:info@electionservices.co.nz)

Report to the  
Northland Regional Council  
regarding the

## 2022 Triennial Election

From the  
Electoral Officer

10 March 2022



## Table of Contents

Outline.....	2
Background.....	2
Narrative .....	2
Recommendation .....	6
APPENDIX 1 .....	7
APPENDIX 2 .....	8
APPENDIX 3 .....	10



## Outline

The 2022 triennial local government elections will occur on Saturday 8 October 2022. An update on preliminary matters relating to the election is provided to Council, including consideration of the order of candidate names to appear on the voting documents.

## Background

The 2022 triennial elections for local authorities are due to occur on Saturday 8 October 2022 and are required to be undertaken according to the Local Electoral Act 2001, the Local Electoral Regulations 2001 and, to a limited extent, the Local Government Act 2002.

Certain pre-election information and tasks are outlined in this report for Council's information and attention.

The Local Electoral Regulations 2001 provides for Council to resolve the order of candidate names to appear on the voting documents (alphabetical, pseudo-random or random order). If no decision is made, the order of names defaults to alphabetical.

## Narrative

### 2022 Elections

Elections will be required for the following positions:

- Councillors (9)\*:
  - Far North General Constituency (1)
  - Bay of Islands-Whangaroa General Constituency (1)
  - Kaipara General Constituency (1)
  - Mid North General Constituency (1)
  - Coastal Central General Constituency (1)
  - Whangārei Central General Constituency (1)
  - Coastal South General Constituency (1)
  - Te Raki Māori Constituency (2).

\*subject to determination by the Local Government Commission, expected by 10 April 2022.

There are no longer elections held for district health board members.

2022 Election Timetable	<p>With an election date of <b>Saturday 8 October 2022</b>, the following key functions and dates will apply:</p> <p><b>Nominations open/roll open</b> Friday 15 July 2022</p> <p><b>Nominations close/roll closes (noon)</b> Friday 12 August 2022</p> <p><b>Delivery of voting mailers</b> From Friday 16 September 2022</p> <p><b>Close of voting</b> Noon Saturday 8 October 2022</p> <p>A more detailed timetable is attached <a href="#">Appendix 1</a>.</p>
2022 Election Fact Sheet	<p>A 2022 Election Fact Sheet summarising the key functions of the election (<a href="#">Appendix 2</a>) is also attached.</p>
Representation Review	<p>Following the decision to establish one or more Māori constituency in 2021, Northland Regional Council undertook a representation arrangements review (review of constituencies, boundaries, numbers of elected members etc).</p> <p>The final proposal is subject to the Local Government Commission determination (expected by 10 April 2022).</p> <p>If the final proposal is adopted, a new district-wide Māori constituency will be introduced and the current constituency boundaries and names changed. The total number of councillors remains the (nine).</p>
Compilation of non-resident Ratepayer Roll	<p>The compilation of the 2022 non-resident Ratepayer Roll is required to commence in early-mid 2022 by the three constituent territorial authorities. This will include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• an insert detailing the qualifications and procedures for enrolment as a non-resident ratepayer elector to be included with a 2022 constituent territorial authority rates instalment notice by the end of August 2022 (<a href="#">Appendix 3</a>);</li><li>• a national Ratepayer Roll inquiry hotline operating between 1 February and 30 August 2022;</li><li>• a confirmation letter issued to all current constituent territorial authority non-resident ratepayer electors in March/April 2022;</li></ul>

- a national advertising campaign on the qualifications and procedures for enrolment as a non-resident ratepayer elector during May 2022.

The above are all required to be undertaken by the constituent territorial authorities.

#### Order of Candidate Names

Regulation 31 of the Local Electoral Regulations 2001 provides the opportunity for Council to choose the order of candidate names appearing on the voting documents from three options – alphabetical, pseudo-random (names drawn randomly with all voting documents printed in this order) or random order (names randomly drawn by computer with each voting document different).

Council may determine which order the names of candidates are to appear on the voting documents, but if no decision is made, the order of names defaults to alphabetical.

Council resolved to adopt the alphabetical order for the 2019 triennial election.

For Council's information, following a recent analysis undertaken by Auckland Council, research showed no observable effect of candidate order on actual election outcomes.

For the 2019 local government elections:

- 22 territorial authorities used alphabetical order (32.84%)
- 7 territorial authorities used pseudo-random order (10.44%)
- 38 territorial authorities used random order (56.72%).

#### Alphabetical Order

Alphabetical order is simply listing candidate surnames alphabetically and is the order traditionally used in local and Parliamentary elections.

Comments regarding alphabetical order are:

- voters are easily able to find names of candidates for whom they wish to vote. Some candidates and voters over the years have argued that alphabetical order may tend to favour candidates with names in the first part of the alphabet, but in practice this is generally not the case – most voters tend to look for name recognition,

regardless of where in the alphabet the surname lies;

- the order of candidate names on the voting document matches the order listed in the candidate directory (candidate profile statements).

### **Pseudo-Random Order**

Pseudo-random order is where candidate surnames are randomly selected, and the same order is used on all voting documents for that position. The names are randomly selected by a method such as drawing names out of a container.

Comments regarding pseudo-random order are:

- the candidate names appear in mixed order (not alphabetical) on the voting document;
- possible voter criticism/confusion as specific candidate names are not easily found, particularly where there may be many candidates;
- the order of candidate names on the voting document does not match the order listed in the candidate directory (candidate profile statements).

### **Random Order**

Random order is where all candidate surnames are randomly selected and are listed in a different order on every voting document. The names are randomly selected by computer so that the order is different.

Random order enables names to be listed in a completely unique order on each voting document.

Comments regarding random order are:

- the candidate names appear in mixed order (not alphabetical) on the voting document;
- possible voter criticism/confusion as specific candidate names are not easily found, particularly where there are many candidates;
- the order of candidate names on the voting document does not match the order listed in the candidate directory (candidate profile statements).

There is no price differential in printing costs between the three orders of candidate names.

Number of Electors	The number of electors for the 2022 triennial elections in the Northland region is expected to be 132,000 (as at 31 January 2022 this was 133,442). This compares to 120,548 electors for the 2019 triennial election or +9.5% growth.
Pre-Election Report	Section 99A of the Local Government Act 2002 requires each local authority to prepare a pre-election report, whose purpose is to provide information to promote public discussion about the issues facing the local authority. The pre-election report is prepared by the Chief Executive, must contain financial and major project information, and should be completed by the end of June 2022 (two weeks before the opening of nominations).

## Recommendation

It is recommended that:

Council resolves for the 2022 triennial election, to adopt *either*:

- (i) the alphabetical order of candidate names; *or*
- (ii) the pseudo-random order of candidate names; *or*
- (iii) the random order of candidate names

as permitted under regulation 31 of the Local Electoral Regulations 2001.

Author:



Dale Ofoske  
Electoral Officer // Northland Regional Council  
Election Services

## APPENDIX 1



Wednesday 2 March - Saturday 30 April 2022	Ratepayer roll enrolment confirmation forms sent [Reg 16, LER]
Wednesday 2 March - Wednesday 6 July 2022	Preparation of ratepayer roll [Reg 10, LER]
May 2022	National ratepayer roll qualifications and procedures campaign [Sec 39, LEA]
Friday 1 July 2022	Electoral Commission's enrolment update campaign commences
Wednesday 13 July 2022	Public notice of election, calling for nominations, rolls open for inspection [Sec 42, 52, 53, LEA]
Friday 15 July 2022	<b>Nominations open / roll open for inspection</b> [Sec 42, LEA]
Friday 12 August 2022	<b>Nominations close (12 noon) / roll closes</b> [Sec 5, 42, 55 LEA, Reg 21, LER]
Wednesday 17 August 2022	Public notice of day of election, candidates' names [Sec 65, LEA]
by Monday 12 September 2022	Electoral officer certifies final electoral roll [Sec 51, LEA, Reg 22, LER]
Friday 16 September - Wednesday 21 September 2022	<b>Delivery of voting documents</b> [Reg 51, LER]
Friday 16 September - Saturday 8 October 2022	Progressive roll scrutiny [Sec 83, LEA] Special voting period [Sec 5 LEA, Reg 35, LER] Early processing period [Sec 80, LEA]
by Friday 7 October 2022	Appointment of scrutineers (12 noon) [Sec 68, LEA]
<b>Saturday 8 October 2022</b>	<b>Election day</b> [Sec 10, LEA] Close of voting (12 noon) [Sec 84, LEA] Progress and preliminary results available as soon as practicable after close of voting [Sec 85, LEA]
Saturday 8 October (pm) - Thursday 13 October 2022	Official count [Sec 84, LEA]
Friday 14 October - Wednesday 19 October 2022	Declaration of result/public notice of declaration [Sec 86, LEA]
by 9 December 2022	Return of electoral donations & expenses form [Sec 112A, LEA]

LEA = Local Electoral Act 2001  
LER = Local Electoral Regulations 2001



// Dale Ofoske, Electoral Officer  
Northland Regional Council  
December 2021

## APPENDIX 2

# FACT SHEET

## 2022 election

### 8 OCTOBER 2022



#### What does Council do?

While city or district councils are responsible for a wide range of local services in your area, the role and responsibilities of the Regional Council involve managing the region's natural resources - it manages land, air, coast and the quality of water in our lakes and rivers. They are also responsible for biodiversity, regional parks, flood protection, emergency management and regional transport. The Regional Council works closely with city or district councils and other agencies on some issues, to ensure they are managed to benefit the entire region.

#### Background

Local government triennial elections are being held by postal vote on Saturday 8 October 2022 and will be undertaken by Election Services, under contract to the Northland Regional Council.

The elections are undertaken on behalf of the regional council by its three constituent territorial authorities (Far North District Council, Whangārei District Council and Kaipara District Council). In addition to their own elections (Mayor, Council etc), each constituent territorial authority is also required to undertake regional council elections.

The first past the post (FPP) electoral system will be used for the Northland Regional Council elections.

#### 2022 Key Dates

Nominations open	Friday 15 July
Nominations close	Noon, Friday 12 August
Delivery of voting packs	from Friday 16 September
Close of voting	Noon, Saturday 8 October
Official results announced	Thursday 13 October

#### Who is being elected?

Following the decision to establish Māori constituencies in 2021, Northland Regional Council undertook a representation arrangements review (review of constituencies, boundaries, number of elected members etc).

Elections will be required for the following positions:\*

- Councillors (9)
  - Far North General Constituency (1)
  - Bay of Islands-Whangaroa General Constituency (1)
  - Kaipara General Constituency (1)
  - Mid North General Constituency (1)
  - Coastal Central General Constituency (1)
  - Whangārei Central General Constituency (1)
  - Coastal South General Constituency (1)
  - Te Raki Māori Constituency (2)

\* subject to determination by the Local Government Commission, expected by 10 April 2022.

#### How can I be nominated?

Nominations for these positions will open on **Friday 15 July 2022** and close at noon on **Friday 12 August 2022**.

Nomination papers will be available during this period:

- Council's Whangārei Office, 36 Water Street, Whangārei
- Council's Dargaville Office, 32 Hokianga Road, Dargaville
- Council's Kaitiāia Office, 192 Commerce Street, Kaitiāia
- Council's Waipapa Office, Shop 9, 12 Klinac Lane, Waipapa
- by accessing [www.nrc.govt.nz](http://www.nrc.govt.nz);
- by telephoning the electoral office on 0800 922 822.

To be eligible to stand for election, a candidate **must** be:

- a New Zealand citizen (by birth or naturalisation ceremony); **and**
- enrolled as a Parliamentary elector (anywhere in New Zealand) on either the general or Māori electoral roll, irrespective of the constituency being nominated for; **and**
- nominated by two electors whose names appear on the respective electoral roll within the constituency that a candidate is standing for.

A detailed candidate information handbook will be available from April 2022.

#### Who can vote?

Those eligible to vote are all resident electors and non-resident ratepayer electors whose names appear on the electoral roll when it closes on Friday 12 August 2022. The Preliminary Electoral Roll will be available for public inspection from **Friday 15 July 2022 to Friday 12 August 2022** at the above locations.

**Resident Roll:** All parliamentary electors, including those on the Māori Electoral Roll, are automatically enrolled on the Resident Roll, at the address where they live.

Any alterations to the Resident Roll (e.g. change of address details, including new postal addresses) should be made by:

- completing the appropriate form at any postal agency;
- phoning 0800 ENROLNOW (0800 36 76 56)
- accessing the Electoral Commission website on: [www.vote.nz](http://www.vote.nz)

**Ratepayer Roll:** If a person is on the parliamentary roll in one area and pays rates on a property in another area, this person may be eligible to be enrolled on the non-resident ratepayer roll. A firm, company, corporation or society paying rates on a property may nominate one of its members or officers as a ratepayer elector (provided the nominated person resides outside the area). Ratepayer Roll enrolment forms are available from respective territorial authority websites, or by phoning 0800 922 822.

Māori constituency councillors are elected by those enrolled on the Māori constituency electoral roll.

General constituency councillors are elected by those enrolled on the general constituency electoral roll.

### How to vote?

Voting packs will be sent out in the mail to all those who have enrolled from **Friday 16 September 2022**.

The voting period is three weeks (**Friday 16 September 2022 to noon Saturday 8 October 2022**). Electors may post their completed voting documents back to the electoral officer using the orange pre-paid envelope sent with their voting document.

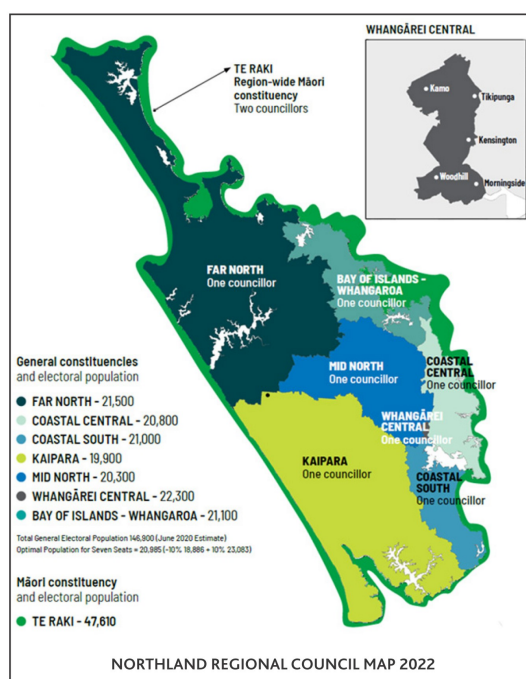
Polling places for the issuing of special voting documents and for the receiving of completed voting documents will be available from Friday 16 September 2022 to noon, Saturday 8 October 2022 at:

- Far North District Council's Main Office, 5 Memorial Avenue, Kaikohe

- Kaipara District Council's Main Office, 32 Hokianga Road, Dargaville
- Whangārei District Council's Office, Forum North, Rust Avenue, Whangārei.

To be counted, all completed voting documents must be in the hands of the electoral officer or an electoral official by **noon Saturday 8 October 2022**.

Progress results will be announced early afternoon of election day. Preliminary results will be announced early on Sunday morning, 9 October 2022, and final results will be known on Thursday 13 October 2022. All results will be accessible on Council's website: [www.nrc.govt.nz](http://www.nrc.govt.nz)



### Contact us



Dale Ofoske, Electoral Officer  
Independent Election Services Ltd  
Level 2, 198 Federal Street, Auckland  
PO Box 5135, Victoria Street West, Auckland 1142  
Email: [info@electionservices.co.nz](mailto:info@electionservices.co.nz)  
Phone: 0800 922 822

Chris Taylor, Governance Support Manager  
Northland Regional Council  
36 Water Street, Whangārei  
Private Bag 9021, Whangārei Mail Centre, Whangārei 0148  
Email: [christinet@nrc.govt.nz](mailto:christinet@nrc.govt.nz)  
Phone: 0800 002 004 or (09) 470 1224



## APPENDIX 3



### Wherever you pay rates you can vote

### Do you live in one area and pay rates on a property in another area?

You may qualify to vote in both areas at the local authority elections in October 2022

You may like to vote in this election. Voting is a way to have your say on what happens in your local community. This information is designed to help you. It notes who you can contact to enrol, and ways you might qualify to vote.

#### There are two types of electors...

**Residential Electors** – If you are registered to vote on the electoral roll, you are automatically enrolled to vote in local authority elections. You will receive a voting document so that you can vote by post.

**Ratepayer Electors** – You may also be eligible to enrol as a non-resident ratepayer elector in a council district if both of these apply:

- you are on the district valuation roll and pay rates in the council district
- the address where you are registered as a Parliamentary elector is outside that council district.

Your eligibility to enrol or be nominated as a ratepayer elector may also depend on your individual circumstances as determined by criteria in the Local Electoral Act 2001 and its regulations.

### An organisation can nominate one of its members or officers to vote on its behalf

If a firm, company, trust, corporation, society partners, joint tenants and tenants in common collectively pay rates on a property in a council district, one of the group may be nominated to be the ratepayer elector. The person nominating and the nominated person must be registered as Parliamentary electors at addresses outside the council district where the property is located.

#### You can only enrol once

You can only enrol, or be nominated to enrol, once in a council district, no matter how many properties you own in that council district. Council district includes: a city, district and regional council area; a community board area if established; the area of Auckland Council and the local boards.

#### New Ratepayer Electors

If you think you may be eligible to enrol or to nominate someone as a ratepayer elector, get an Enrolment Form for Ratepayer Electors from the local council where you pay your rates. The Electoral Officer will be able to help you with your application.

#### If you want further information please phone toll free

0800 54 8683 0800 LG VOTE

(phone number is available from 7 February 2022 to 30 August 2022)



**Enrol now – the  
Ratepayer Electoral  
Roll closes on  
12 August 2022**

# Local Authority Elections 2022

## Pre-Election Protocols for Candidates

---

On Saturday 8 October 2022, the Northland region will elect a new council. These protocols have been created to provide guidance on the use of council resources in the pre-election period for all candidates (whether current elected members or not).

### Key dates

- Friday 8 July 2022 – Pre-election period begins (three months prior to election day)
- Friday 15 July 2022 – Nominations open
- Friday 12 August 2022 – Nominations close at 12 noon
- Friday 16 September to Wednesday 21 September 2022 – Voting documents delivered to households (voting starts)
- Saturday 8 October 2022 – Voting closes at 12 noon, progress and preliminary results available as soon as practicable after close of voting.
- Saturday 8 October to Tuesday 25 October 2022 – Period between election day and swearing in of new council.

### Pre-election period

All candidates are impacted by the three month 'pre-election period'. This period is the subject of the good practice advice 'Communications in the pre-election period' (Included as **Attachment One**) issued by Local Government New Zealand and Taituarā (previously the Society of Local Government Managers) and peer reviewed by legal advisors from the Office of the Auditor General (OAG) and the Department of Internal Affairs (DIA).

Candidates are encouraged to be familiar with this document, to ensure their own conduct during the pre-election period does not result in the guidelines being breached (or being perceived as having been breached). Particularly relevant sections are as follows:

***Principle 1 – The operation of local authorities continues during the pre-election period. Elected members continue to have the right to govern and make decisions during the pre-election period.***

There is no legal requirement that local authorities avoid making decisions in the pre-election period. Routine business must continue. However it is best practice, where practicable, to make any significant decisions before the pre-election period commences.

***Principle 3 – Local authorities must not promote, or be perceived to promote, the prospects of any candidate, especially a sitting member. Using council resources for re-election of sitting members is unacceptable and possibly unlawful.***

Promoting the re-election prospects of a candidate, directly or indirectly, advertently or inadvertently, is not the role of a local authority and could result in an election result being overturned.

An elected member standing for office may not use council resources of any kind for campaigning purposes. This includes, but is not limited to council's logo and branding, all council marketing and communication channels (including social media), council-supplied business cards, stationery, computers, email, mobile phones, photocopiers, cars, council venues (other than those available for hire to the general public) and council's human resources.

Other uses of council communications facilities during a pre-election period may also be unacceptable. For example, allowing members access to council resources to communicate with constituents, even in their official capacities as members, could create a perception that council is helping sitting members to promote their re-election prospects over other candidates.

**Other important factors to consider during the pre-election period:**

***Communications.***

Ceasing all council communications during a pre-election period is not possible. Statutory council business must continue. However, care must be taken to avoid the perception, and the consequent risk of electoral irregularity. Two examples are:

- Journalistic use of photographic material or information that may raise the profile of a member in the electorate should be discontinued during the pre-election period; and
- Access to council resources for members to issue media releases, in their capacities as official spokespersons, should be limited to what is strictly necessary to communicate statutory council business.

As portfolio spokespeople (for example transport, environment, economic development), councillors often comment through media releases or in other ways on relevant issues of public interest.

However, to comply with best practice, from the beginning of the pre-election period, councillors must not be quoted in media releases or other council communications unless it is for a statutory purpose. Councillor attendance at public events (for example, EnviroSchools) and tools such as regional newsletters, publications, the Chair's Report (other than basic factual information) or use of photographic material or information that may raise the profile of a member in the electorate will be suspended during the pre-election period.

Some mandatory and routine statutory council business can continue, such as the Annual Report, which would include information (including photos) about current councillors.

***Council staff***

Council staff should remain politically neutral at all times in their dealings with elected members and the public in general. This is even more important in the pre-election period when there is a heightened interest in council. Council staff will be briefed prior to the pre-election period to ensure they are familiar with the requirement for both councillors and staff.

It is not appropriate or acceptable for staff to align themselves to, or demonstrably support, a candidate in their capacity as an NRC employee. This could result in allegations of bias by council.

## **Social Media**

A big part of being a councillor is engaging with the community – social media is a useful tool for this. However, during the election period, the following guidelines for candidates apply to your interactions with council social media channels.

### *Commenting on and sharing council posts*

- Northland Regional Council (NRC) web and social media channels may not be used by anyone (candidates or members of the public) for campaigning or electioneering. These channels include (but are not limited to) Facebook, Twitter, LinkedIn, Instagram and Youtube. Any such comments will be deleted immediately.
- Any post (positive or negative) made on NRC social media by an individual specifically relating to his or her own (or someone else's) nomination, intention to run for council or election campaign, will be removed immediately.
- Candidates may engage with NRC social media posts (react, share or comment), provided their engagement is not deemed to be campaigning. Any such activity will be removed immediately. This also applies when sharing NRC content to a candidate's own social media. You may be asked to remove this where it breaches protocol. Refer to the Taituarā guide, "Communications in the pre-election period" for examples.
- Resources that have already been produced and made available publicly through NRC digital channels may be shared to educate or inform people about what council does. However, we will not supply original versions of these assets to candidates.

### *Working with staff*

- No candidate should approach NRC staff (in their capacity as a staff member) for advice or support with the set up or management of their social media accounts.
- Candidates must not actively solicit social media sharing, posting or any other form of endorsement from staff (in their capacity as a staff member). Council staff must observe political neutrality when performing their duties as an employee of council.

### *NRC will:*

- Monitor all candidate pages during the pre-election and election period.
- Remain neutral during the election process but will encourage people to stand for election and encourage the general public to vote in the elections. These posts will not be associated with any candidates.

## **Requests for information**

All requests for information should be lodged as official information requests (copied into the relevant Group Manager) and will be treated as such.



Attachment One  
**We are.**  
**LGNZ.**  
Te Kāhui Kaunihera o Aotearoa.

# Communications in the pre-election period



leadinglearninglinking

Attachment One

Communications in the pre-election period

## FOREWORD

This guidance sets out principles and guidelines for local authorities and their members to apply when developing and delivering communications during the pre-election period. It may also assist elected members seeking to distinguish between their campaigning and council responsibilities.

It is important that local authorities be able to continue to operate effectively during the pre-election period, but additional care should be taken during this time. Public interest in, and scrutiny of, communications by councils and their elected members is likely to be greater during this period.

With the development of tools such as social media, guidance can not possibly contemplate every potential situation that may arise. As a result, this guidance is principle based – though there are a number of worked examples (based on real-life issues that have arisen). These serve as a ‘common sense’ basis for the application of good judgement backed by appropriate advice.

There are cases or circumstances that are relatively clear cut. For example, elected members inserting personal statements or photos in the pre-election report is both a legislative breach and a breach of the principles set out in this guidance. For cases that are not as clear cut, the guidance provides some bottom lines to keep in mind when navigating the situation.

We thank those involved in the production of this helpful resource.

Karen Thomas  
Chief Executive  
Taituarā

Susan Freeman-Greene  
Chief Executive  
Local Government New Zealand

Communications in the pre-election period

## WHAT STATUS DOES THIS GUIDANCE HAVE?

The guidance represents good practice advice prepared by Local Government New Zealand and Taituarā (formerly the Society of Local Government Managers). It has been reviewed by legal advisors and by staff at the Office of the Auditor-General and the Department of Internal Affairs.

Neither Local Government New Zealand nor Taituarā has the authority to receive or investigate allegations around local authority communications made during the pre-election period.

However, the Auditor-General remains interested in the appropriate use of council resources at all times. Use of council resources for personal or political purposes is not appropriate.

The Office of the Auditor-General is not the agency to take complaints about the veracity (or otherwise) of claims made in communications material, but it could choose to investigate where, for example, there are questions as to whether a council-funded communication was made for a proper purpose. In the latter case the Auditor-General may report their conclusions and make recommendations – they cannot direct local authorities to take (or not take) a particular action.<sup>1</sup>

Local authorities and their members should also be aware that, in some cases, communications that breach the principles of the *Local Electoral Act 2001* could give rise to an irregularity in the election process. Such an irregularity may be used as grounds to challenge an election outcome under the *Local Electoral Act*.

## WHAT IS THE PRE-ELECTION PERIOD?

For the purposes of this guidance, we've aligned the pre-election period to the definition of the 'applicable period' in *section 104* of the *Local Electoral Act 2001*. That is, the pre-election period starts three months from polling day. An election could be a triennial general election, by-election or less frequently, a poll.

## WHAT IS A COMMUNICATION?

For the purposes of this guidance, a communication is any presentation of information by the council to its local community, regardless of the form in which the information is presented (e.g. documents, internet, spoken word etc).

Some common examples of a communication include but are not limited to:

- statutory documents such as an annual report (or its summary), long-term or annual plans (or their associated consultation documents)
- information contained on a council website about council plans, policies, bylaws, services, or information about council meetings (such as meeting agendas and minutes)
- newsletters and information releases providing council news and information about council activities
- educational material about issues affecting the community
- promotional material about a particular event, proposal or policy
- council administered social media channels (such as Facebook, YouTube, Twitter and the like)
- representing council in media interviews.

<sup>1</sup> One example where the Auditor-General may make a binding recommendation, is where a loss has occurred under *section 44* of the *Local Government Act 2001*. In those instances a loss may be recovered from those elected members deemed responsible for the loss.



## PRINCIPLES

### **1. *The operation of local authorities continues during the pre-election period. Elected members continue to have the right to govern and make decisions during the pre-election period.***

There is no legal requirement that local authorities avoid making decisions in the pre-election period. Equally, there is no convention such as the so-called 'period of restraint' that applies in central government or the so-called 'purdah' that applies in local government in some jurisdictions in the United Kingdom.

In any case, routine business must continue. Some examples of routine business include the following:

- giving effect to decisions that have already been made. For example, implementing decisions in an already adopted long-term plan or annual plan (the necessary actions and funding have already been committed)
- meeting statutory requirements e.g. reviewing a bylaw that is due to expire or adopting some policy or bylaw where a deadline falls during the pre-election period (though this should be rare)
- preparing, adopting and publicly releasing reports or other documents that are statutory requirements (for example, the pre-election report and annual report)
- releasing other factual information – especially where release regularly occurs during the pre-election period in other years (for example, where information of a monitoring or statistical nature is regularly released in August, September and October).<sup>2</sup>

Councils can minimise the risks of undue and adverse public scrutiny of decision-making in the pre-election period by ensuring that, where practicable, significant decisions are made before the pre-election period commences or that officers have sufficient direction to continue to work on major projects during the pre-election period. Mechanisms such as providing a rolling programme of policy and bylaw reviews early in the triennium can help manage this and ensure the work gets done.

Sitting members with roles such as a mayor, council chair or council spokesperson on an issue may continue to make public statements on council business as they would outside the pre-election period.

During the pre-election period councils should take particular care to actively identify and manage risks associated with communications that might be used for political purposes (or be seen to be). For example, media interviews often contain elements of the unscripted where it's easy for politicians to slip into campaign mode unintentionally. If the risks can't be managed it may be less risky for the chief executive or communications manager to act as a spokesperson.

### **2. *During the pre-election period, communities have the same legitimate need for information about their local authority's decisions and activities as at any other time.***

A legitimate provision of information consists of five key elements: timeliness, accuracy, completeness, fairness of expression and neutrality. Information is timely if it is provided either before an event or decision, or as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter. Accuracy means that information should be based on a verifiable fact, and recorded in a manner consistent with those facts.

<sup>2</sup> Decisions to defer or alter releases of information in the pre-election period can give rise to the same claims of undue politicisation as decisions to communicate such information.

## Communications in the pre-election period

Completeness requires that all of the information necessary for readers to reasonably form a view on a matter is included. Information is fairly expressed if it's presented in an objective, unbiased and equitable way. Neutrality in expression means that the council's collective position is expressed.

The council's 'usual' processes and timeframes for the preparation and release of information should continue to operate 'as normal' in the pre-election period. For example, staff who prepare responses to requests for official information should continue to follow the same timeframes they normally would. Decisions to defer or to expedite a request for information during the pre-election period can leave officers open to claims of bias that are mostly avoidable.

The *Local Government Act 2002* allows councils until 31 October to adopt an annual report. However it is not good practice for an incoming council to adopt a report on the performance of its predecessor. It is good practice to adopt an annual report before the elections – indeed about two-thirds of local authorities did so in the lead-up to the 2019 elections.

### **3. *Local authorities must not promote, or be perceived to promote, the prospects of any candidate, especially a sitting member. Using council resources for re-election of sitting members is unacceptable and potentially unlawful.***

The Office of the Auditor-General has previously noted that promoting the re-election prospects of a sitting member, whether directly or indirectly, wittingly or unwittingly, is not part of the proper role of a local authority. We can only agree with what should be a statement of the obvious. This includes allowing sitting members to use council resources for election purposes.

While much less likely to arise, it would also be entirely inappropriate for a local authority to, in any way, promote any other candidates for an election. Again, council resources cannot be used for such electioneering purposes.

Council resources include assets and services such as stationery, post, internet, council-provided email/social media accounts or telephones. If in doubt as to whether something is a council-provided resource, a good question to ask is whether the council purchases or funds it. For example, a council-funded radio slot would be regarded as a council resource.

Election activities carried out at council facilities are similarly unacceptable, except where these facilities are open to hire by the general public (for example, community halls) and the candidate is meeting the standard terms for using the facility.

If in doubt, it's usually a good idea to take a precautionary approach. It doesn't mean that elected members can not use a council's resources for normal activities, but care is needed as the boundaries between answering a ratepayer query and campaigning can be difficult to navigate. For example, it's legitimate for an elected member to use a council email to defend a council decision or action, or even to explain their own position on a decision where different from other elected members (provided it's noted clearly as such in the relevant minutes). But doing the latter without slipping into campaign mode can sometimes be difficult during the pre-election period.

## CASE STUDIES: THE PRINCIPLES IN ACTION

### Example One: Appearances in a council-funded radio slot

Manu is the Mayor of Kiwi District Council. Kiwi District Council pays for a fortnightly radio spot on Eastland FM. The mayor and the Eastland FM director of news talk about issues facing Kiwi District and other issues in the Eastland region.

A month out from the election Manu appears on the radio show 'as usual'. His interview covers a range of topics – including a change to the council's recycling policy, the first instalment of rates for the year, and the council joining in the Eastland economic development CCO. Manu answers these questions drawing on a series of talking points prepared by council staff that reflect the existing council policy.

A fortnight from the election Manu appears again. This time the interview occurs the night after a candidates' debate in which the mayor's opponent (local business leader I B Sharp) described the council's financial management as an "uninterrupted retreat from reality". Among regular questions such as the Prime Minister's visit to Kiwi District and answering ratepayer questions on recycling, the interviewer asks if Manu wants to respond to Ms Sharp's comments.

Manu replies with a comment that, *"rates have gone up an average 10 percent across the district in this term, debt's increased but we've funded the recycling transfer station, and the new Kiwi bypass. We haven't had to lay anyone off unlike Ms Sharp recently did. If I'm re-elected, I'll reduce the council debt by a third in the next term"*.

Ms Sharp releases a statement deploring Manu's regular misuse of a council resource for political purposes.

Is she right?

In the first interview, Manu did nothing more than state and explain the council policy. On the facts presented, Manu has not made any statements that could be seen as anything beyond a spokesperson's role.

Manu's statements during the second interview have elements of campaigning. Manu's statements about the average rates increase, the increase in debt and what the debt was applied to are factual (assuming they were correct). A council spokesperson would normally be required to provide factual information about council performance.

The statement about the council not having to lay off any staff may well be factual, as indeed may the layoffs in Ms Sharp's business. But the latter has little or nothing to do with any council activity. By linking or comparing the two, Manu has, however inadvertently, used a council resource for campaign purposes.

In a similar vein, in using the personal pronoun "I" and referencing his own re-election in his statement about future council debt (*"If I'm re-elected, I'll . . ."*), Manu would almost certainly be seen as making a campaign pledge. Had Manu said something like *"the council's current financial strategy has debt forecast to reduce by a third over the next term"*, he would have been providing a factual statement about the forecast impacts of present policy.

## Communications in the pre-election period

This example, while having fictional elements, provides a good example of challenges that sitting elected members may face when in a role as a council spokesperson during the pre-election period. It illustrates how easily the line between legitimate council communications and campaigning can be crossed, sometimes unintentionally.

These situations usually occur spontaneously and cannot be easily predicted. While normal council business continues during the pre-election period, risks must be actively managed. There may be less risk in Kiwi District's chief executive filling the slot, or perhaps getting an elected member who is not standing again, or has been re-elected unopposed to do the interview.

### **Example Two: Use of a council vehicle**

Lucy is the chair of Eastland Regional Council. Her remuneration package includes the use of a council-provided motor vehicle (assume this is all in accordance with Remuneration Authority guidelines). The car has the Eastland Regional Council logo painted on the front door on each side.

Campaigning has started. One night, Lucy's teenage son returns from a stint handing out campaign collateral and places a 'Re-elect Lucy' sticker on the car's rear bumper. Lucy does not notice the sticker and drives around Eastland Region for the next week before a local journalist sees the car at the council office, takes a cellphone photo of it, and runs it in the newspaper the following day.

On seeing the story the council's electoral officer asks Lucy to remove the sticker.

What should Lucy do?

Lucy should remove the sticker to avoid any appearance of using council resources for her campaign advertising. While there is some element of de minimis (the law does not bother with trifles), in the pre-election period it is probably 'better to be safe than sorry'.

It would be up to Lucy to decide whether she might seek to respond to the newspaper story about the sticker. If she were to do so, it would be in the context of her campaign, not in her role as chair.

### **Example Three: Use of council-owned facilities**

Ted is a councillor at Weka District Council and the council's local economy spokesperson. His campaign manager has booked two campaign meetings in two council-owned halls. Both halls are open for any member of the public to book – subject to payment of the applicable fee. The campaign manager booked the venue and paid the fee on 31 August i.e. during the pre-election period.

Ted's opponent, I M Wright, claims Ted is using council resources for campaign purposes. The council's chief executive responds pointing out that Ted's campaign paid the same fee as any other user, and that Wright (and any other candidate) could book the halls. She declines to take further action.

Who is correct?

#### Communications in the pre-election period

In this instance the chief executive is correct. While the halls are council-owned, they are open to booking by any person who pays the fee and meets the council's standard terms and conditions. As long as Ted and his campaign have paid the fee and met any relevant conditions in the same way that any other person hiring the venue would need to, this is not considered a council resource for the purpose of this guidance.

Had the council extended use of the halls for free or not made the halls available to other candidates on the same terms as they did for Ted, that would be a potentially serious issue.

Of course, Ted should ensure the payment of the booking fee is properly documented and recorded as a campaign expense for *Local Electoral Act* purposes.

#### Example Four: Candidate use of social media

Councillor Playne is a member of Kiwi District Council and chair of the Finance Committee. She runs a personal facebook page 'Playne speaking' in which she comments on issues of the day. The council has recently adopted water metering (first invoices have been sent), and the Anti-Privatisation League of Aotearoa (APLA) has endorsed a mayoral candidate and a slate of five anti-metering council candidates.

A week before election day, Cr Playne posts two comments on Facebook. In the first she posts on her own Facebook page to comment on a press release put out by the APLA comparing the council's recent introduction of water metering to a "privatisation by stealth" agenda. Her post includes a link to APLA's Facebook page with a 'thumbs down' emoji and states: *"Speaking for myself, I have better things to do than debate the policy equivalent of the flat earth society when they're so obviously wrong. Get a life APLA!"*

In the second instance, she comments on a post by the council on its Facebook page celebrating the first anniversary of the Upper Creek branch library opening. She 'likes' the post on the council's page and comments: *"Happy anniversary! It was a real battle to convince the other members that Upper Creek needed a library. Re-elect me and I'll get the town a pool."*

Was it OK for Cr Playne to make these two posts?

Cr Playne's post about APLA, while somewhat aggressively worded, is not contrary to these guidelines. She has used a personal social media account and clearly identified that she is not speaking on behalf of the council in response to material on a social media site not associated with council. The rest of the comment is a matter for democratic debate and henceforth for the voters to judge.

The Upper Creek Library post is a little different. Here Cr Playne has commented on a council post on a council social media site (which is a council resource). The last sentence is obviously a campaign pledge and therefore puts this post into the campaigning category. The second sentence also has elements of campaigning in that it suggests a particular service choice might not have been made without Cr Playne's intervention. Council would then be justified in deleting Cr Playne's comment on the post. Council is entitled to edit its own Facebook page to ensure this council resource remains 'neutral', i.e. not supporting/promoting or criticising any election candidate.

But suppose Cr Playne had just 'liked' the post, or 'liked' and said "Happy anniversary". In and of itself, that isn't necessarily campaigning. In other words, an assessment of these cases turns on what the candidate has **actually communicated** in such a post.

#### Communications in the pre-election period

What about members (or others) using their personal social media accounts to link to the council's account? Suppose, for the sake of clarity, that Cr Playne had used a personal social media tool such as Twitter to 're-tweet' a Twitter communication from the council regarding the anniversary of the Upper Creek Library, and that Cr Playne made the same campaigning comment described in the above example.

While Cr Playne has linked to a council social media site, she's done so using her own account. The information she has accessed is a general communication about council services available to anyone with a social media account, and therefore can be used by any candidate (and indeed any other member of the public). It does not necessarily amount to the council promoting Cr Playne (or anyone else).

While council resource (such as staff time) has been used to produce the communication, this expenditure has already occurred regardless of whether Cr Playne had re-tweeted or not. In this instance, the information is quite obviously a communication to inform the public of a significant date in the Upper Creek community, and even in the pre-election period, it would be pretty difficult to suggest that it amounts to a promotion of a candidate.

At this point readers may ask what the council might do in this circumstance? If feasible, it may delete any post **on its own social media account** (note it can delete other people's comments on its Facebook page, although cannot typically delete other people's re-tweets). It could ask Cr Playne to delete a communication on or from her own personal social media account, but it cannot enforce such a request (and indeed if she's circulating publicly available information there is probably a larger reputational risk from making such a request).





Professional excellence in local government

Taituarā – Local Government Professionals Aotearoa

Level 9, 85 The Terrace, Wellington  
PO Box 10373, Wellington 6143

**T** 04 978 1280

**E** [info@taituara.org.nz](mailto:info@taituara.org.nz)

**W** [taituara.org.nz](http://taituara.org.nz)



**TITLE:                    Audit Fee Proposal For Year Ending 30 June 2022 and 30 June 2023**

**From:**                    Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services

**Authorised by**            Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services, on 05  
**Group Manager/s:**      April 2022

---

**Executive summary/Whakarāpopototanga**

Deloitte had proposed an increase in **base** audit fees from \$122,300 to \$170,300 for FY22.

Through negotiation Deloitte has agreed to a lower increase in **base** audit fees of \$156,300 for FY22 (refer **attachment**). This fee has been approved by the Office of the Auditor General. An additional \$15k of audit fees is proposed for FY22 for the Enterprise Project implementation workstream which requires additional audit effort (as noted in the original and revised Deloitte fee proposals).

In addition to this Deloitte has proposed **base** audit fees of \$178,800 for FY23, reflective of Council's FY22 growth (additional \$14,000) and 5% inflationary adjustment (\$8,500). An additional \$25k of audit fees is proposed for FY23 for the Enterprise Project implementation workstream which requires additional audit effort (as noted in the original and revised Deloitte fee proposals).

Deloitte has also outlined an approach to the setting of audit fees for FY24 and FY 25. The approach is based on three key factors:

- scope changes - this would include things such as material new business activities, and addressing new regulatory requirements (such as new reporting standards).
- adjust the fee (up or down) based on 10% +/- annual changes in budgeted annual expenditure from year to year (as set out in the LTP or Annual Plan).
- inflationary cost escalation – this aspect of the fee would be referenced to the CPI adjustment published annually by Stats NZ.

This approach to audit fees has been endorsed by the Audit and Risk Subcommittee at its meeting of 30 March 2022, with the subcommittee recommending to council that it approve the Audit fees proposed by Deloitte for FY22 & 23, and agreement in principle to the approach outlined by Deloitte for setting of audit fees in FY24 & FY25.

---

**Recommendation(s)**

1. That the report 'Audit Fee Proposal For Year Ending 30 June 2022 and 30 June 2023' by Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services and dated 5 April 2022, be received.
2. That council approve the **base** audit fees of \$156,300 for FY22 and a further \$15k in audit fees for the Enterprise Project implementation workstream.
3. That council approve the **base** audit fees of \$178,800 for FY23 and a further \$25k in audit fees for the Enterprise Project implementation workstream.

4. That council agree in principle to the approach outlined in the **attached** Deloitte proposal for the setting of audit fees for FY24 and FY25.
5. That council approve the NRC Chair to sign the audit engagement letter with Deloitte on behalf of council for the FY22 audit.

## Options

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
1	Approve proposed Audit fees for FY 22 and FY 23 and agree in principle to the approach for the setting of audit fees for FY24 and FY25.	We will have certainty (pending councils approval) of audit fees and an auditor available to undertake our audit work. Approving both FY22 & FY23 provides certainty for both parties and is much more efficient than attempting to renegotiate fees again in FY23. Agreement in principle to the approach for the setting of audit fees for FY24 and FY25 has the same advantages.	Increase audit fees, however these are imminent given the current economic conditions and council's growth.
2	Do not approve proposed Audit fees for FY 22 and FY 23 and do not agree in principle to the approach for the setting of audit fees for FY24 and FY25.	Potential to attempt to negotiate lower audit fees in FY23, however negotiations are unlikely to be successful or favourable to council based on factors such as council's growth and projected inflation.	Further efforts to continue to negotiate audit fees in future years and greater uncertainty.

The staff's recommended option is 1.

## Considerations

### 1. Significance and engagement


In relation to section 79 of the Local Government Act 2002, this decision is considered to be of low significance as it is part of council's day to day activities.

### 2. Financial implications

Budget provision has been made from existing budgets for the increased cost in FY22 audit fees. The increased audit fees for FY23 are unbudgeted (with the exception of the Enterprise Project audit fees which will be funded from the project budget) and will need to be built into the 2023/24 Annual Plan or found from other funding sources.

---

### Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Attachment 1: FY22 and FY23 Audit Fee Proposal NRC Final [↓](#) 

**Deloitte.**



## Northland Regional Council

Audit fee proposal for year ending 30 June 2022 and 30 June 2023

8 MARCH 2022

## **EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**

Thank you for considering our audit fee proposal submitted to the Audit and Risk Subcommittee (ARC) in December 2021. The purpose of this document is to:

- 1) Finalise the fee for the year ended 30 June 2022 following input from the ARC and approval from the OAG;
- 2) Provide a fee estimate for the year ended 30 June 2023; and
- 3) Give you an overview of how we will approach fee setting for FY24 and FY25

We appreciate the constructive way in which both management and the ARC have approached this topic and your support for increasing the fee to reflect the current environment.

We also understand that for FY22 this increase is essentially unbudgeted and we were thus comfortable to accept Council's counteroffer in relation to our original FY22 fee proposal. To summarise we were seeking, in our original proposal, to increase the FY22 base fee from \$122,300 (excluding GST, OAG contribution and disbursements) to \$170,300. Following discussions with management, which incorporated input from the ARC, we have agreed on a base fee for FY22 of \$156,300. In addition to that there are two additional amounts in relation to the FY22 audit that have been agreed (not part of the base fee) relating to an assessment of the maturity of the internal audit function at NRC (\$13,000) and the impact of the Enterprise system change (\$15,000). These fees have now also been approved by the OAG.

### **FY23-25**

Council will be aware that the OAG generally appoints auditors for a three year period, with each individual audit partner only able to provide a maximum of 6 years service. FY22 is the end of the current three period for Deloitte as your audit provider, and represents the end of my 6 years as your audit partner. Management have indicated a willingness to enter a further 3 year contract period with Deloitte, and the OAG is comfortable to endorse that outcome. However we will need to introduce you to a new Deloitte audit partner for the FY23-25 period, and will do so after this person has been formally appointed by the OAG.

Notwithstanding this change in partner it is appropriate for me to lead the fee setting process for FY23 and also to establish the principles by which we will approach the FY24 and FY25 period.

### **Contextual information**

Our December 2021 proposal document provided detailed analysis on the rationale for the fee increase we were seeking. Without wanting to repeat all of that in this document, it is important to acknowledge the key drivers, being growth in the scale of Council's activities and inflationary pressure particularly in relation to professional service salaries, that continue to underpin our thinking on fees.

One of the reasons we reduced the initial proposed fee increase for FY22 by \$14,000 was to be respectful of Council's position in relation to unbudgeted expenditure. We also wanted to be respectful of our audit relationship built up over the last 5 years and to approach this matter in the spirit of open discussion and negotiation. As noted above we are very appreciative that you have taken the same approach.

Notwithstanding the position agreed for FY22 we remain of the view that the underlying contextual pressures remain and so our proposition for FY23 is to propose the same level of base fee that was included in the original proposal, adjusted for anticipated inflation over that period. In this way we are essentially achieving what we consider to be a fair rate per hour to deliver the audit but stepping up to that rate over a two year period. Further analysis is included in the remainder of this document.

I look forward to discussing this proposal with the ARC at the 30 March 2022 meeting.



Peter Gulliver  
**Partner**  
**for Deloitte Limited**  
**Auckland, New Zealand**

## Audit fee bridge – June 2022 to June 2023 proposed

We have agreed that the FY22 fee should be increased to reflect a larger and more complex organisation to audit and a reset of wage costs within professional services as a direct consequence of Covid-19.

On the basis the hours to deliver the audit remain steady at approximately 1,000 then the FY22 base fee of \$156,300 equates to a rate per hour of \$156. As set out in our earlier proposal our benchmarking, and expectations for audits of this nature and complexity would be for a rate per hour in the range of \$170 - \$190.

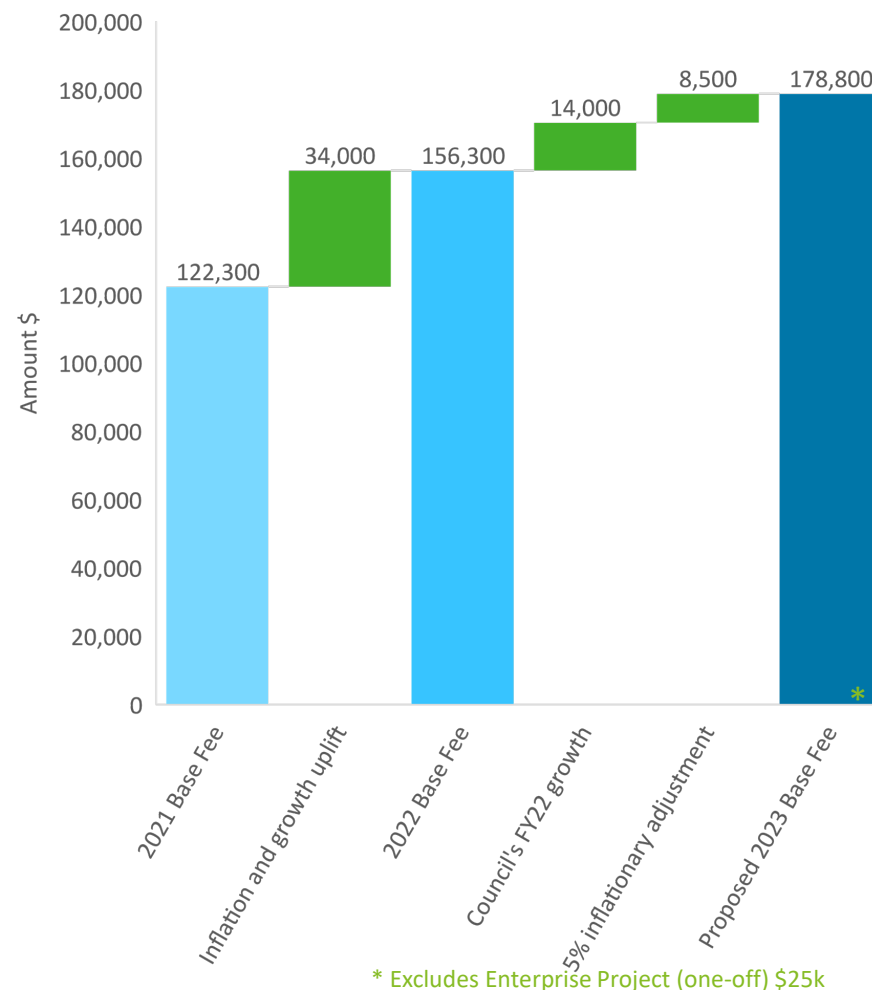
So consistent with the analysis included in our original FY22 proposal, and being mindful of the growth Council had signalled in the 2021-31 LTP we are proposing a base fee for FY23 of \$178,800. The increase from the FY22 agreed position is shown in waterfall chart to the right, but essentially represents two factors:

- 1) Growth in Council's activities not fully reflected in the FY22 fee.  
Council's expenditure will have increased by 53% over the period FY19 – FY23 (using the LTP as guidance for FY23). The FY22 audit fee reflects growth of 28%. Accordingly there is a need for a further lift in the fee to more appropriately capture the audit effort required heading into FY23. We have capped this increase at \$14,000 as it essentially results in the rate per hour to deliver the audit landing at the lower end of the \$170 - \$190 per hour range which we indicated was appropriate in our earlier proposal document.
- 2) An anticipated 5% inflationary increase, in line with recently announced CPI data.

### One off workstream – Enterprise Project Implementation

During FY22 & FY23 Council is migrating from TechOne to Infor as part of the enterprise project implementation. This will result in additional audit procedures needing to be performed, during these two financial years, over the data migration process along with assessing the new business processes, controls and IT environment. This increase is one-off in nature. This cost would be split across the financial years impacted (ie FY22 and FY23) and we have agreed to include a placeholder of \$15,000 for FY22 and \$25,000 for FY23. These fees will depend on the phasing of the project and we will confirm and agree this with you as the work required and the timing thereof is clarified.

As noted in our earlier proposal we have estimated 235 hours to complete this work across FY22 and FY23.



## Approach to FY24 and FY25

In our discussions with the OAG in relation to resetting the FY22 fee they have indicated they are comfortable rolling forward our appointment as your audit service provider for another three year term (covering FY23-25). However given the recent disruptions in the audit market, and the new inflationary environment, our preferred approach is to address the question of audit fees on a year by year basis, rather than fix a fee for that three year period now.

The alternative approach, of setting a three year fee as part of the FY23-25 contractual rollover, introduces a risk around externalities or indeed scope changes, having to be absorbed or addressed through a contract reset. In the current environment we do not believe this is a fair approach, and would likely force us to make conservative assumptions about future market dynamics (which may not play out) and introduce these into the fee. However we also accept that an annual fee setting process introduces some uncertainty for NRC.

Whilst this document addresses the FY23 fee (i.e. year one of the new contract period) we also wanted to signal an approach for FY24 and FY25, rather than leaving this matter open. To provide NRC with more certainty around go-forward fees we have therefore set out below a number of principles that we commit to adhere to for FY24 and FY25.

### *Principles to be applied*

- We propose that the FY24 and FY25 fees are negotiated between us, and agreed upon in the 3<sup>rd</sup> quarter of the preceding financial year. So the FY24 fee would be set in the period January-March 2023, for example. This should enable NRC to incorporate the fee into the budget for the following year and provide certainty on fees in excess of 12 months from when the audit work will be completed.
- On the basis the FY23 fee is agreed we are comfortable that the base rate per hour is now at the low end of what is a reasonable range for an audit of this scale and complexity. Hence we would only propose making adjustments (up or down) based on three factors, namely: scope changes; growth in Council's activities; and to address inflationary cost escalations.
- With respect to scope changes this would include things such as material new business activities, and addressing new regulatory requirements (such as new reporting standards). We would expect to have reasonable line of sight on such items and would look to discuss and agree with you the impact on audit hours so that the fee impact becomes formulaic in the sense of X new hours at the agreed rate per hour.
- Growth in Council's activities, and impact on audit effort, is best measured by expenditure. Although we acknowledge that the relationship between expenditure and audit effort is not linear. Hence we would only seek to adjust the fee (up or down) based on 10% +/- annual changes in budgeted annual expenditure from year to year (as set out in the LTP or Annual Plan). Again the approach would be to discuss and agree with you the impact on proposed audit hours as a result of the proposed growth in expenditure (assuming of course it was +/- 10% as noted) so that the fee impact becomes formulaic in the sense of X more/less hours at the agreed rate per hour.
- With respect to the inflationary cost escalation aspect of the fee we would expect to reference this to the CPI adjustment published annually by Stats NZ. Again this would be a metric we would agree with you in advance.

A further safeguard for NRC is that any fee needs to be approved by the OAG, so if you thought our approach to either of FY24 or FY25 was unreasonable, and not supportable by the facts then there is an inbuilt mechanism for reaching a fair outcome. The OAG captures a significant number of data points and performs benchmarking analysis on audit fees and is in the best possible position to advise on, and if required recommend, a fair and reasonable outcome. However in saying this, we would not expect that this safeguard would need to be applied in reality. This is because we value the open and transparent relationship that has been developed over the past 5 years with the management team and the ARC at NRC. Accordingly we are primarily interested in a long term audit relationship and would not jeopardise this by acting unreasonably on fees. The outcome must be fair to both parties and founded on facts. We trust that our actions historically in this regard will give you confidence in the future relationship.



Deloitte refers to one or more of Deloitte Touche Tohmatsu Limited (“DTTL”), its global network of member firms, and their related entities (collectively, the “Deloitte organisation”). DTTL (also referred to as “Deloitte Global”) and each of its member firms and related entities are legally separate and independent entities, which cannot obligate or bind each other in respect of third parties. DTTL and each DTTL member firm and related entity is liable only for its own acts and omissions, and not those of each other. DTTL does not provide services to clients. Please see [www.deloitte.com/about](http://www.deloitte.com/about) to learn more.

Deloitte Asia Pacific Limited is a company limited by guarantee and a member firm of DTTL. Members of Deloitte Asia Pacific Limited and their related entities, each of which are separate and independent legal entities, provide services from more than 100 cities across the region, including Auckland, Bangkok, Beijing, Hanoi, Hong Kong, Jakarta, Kuala Lumpur, Manila, Melbourne, Osaka, Seoul, Shanghai, Singapore, Sydney, Taipei and Tokyo.

Deloitte is a leading global provider of audit and assurance, consulting, financial advisory, risk advisory, tax and related services. Our global network of member firms and related entities in more than 150 countries and territories (collectively, the “Deloitte organisation”) serves four out of five Fortune Global 500® companies. Learn how Deloitte’s approximately 312,000 people make an impact that matters at [www.deloitte.com](http://www.deloitte.com).

Deloitte New Zealand brings together more than 1400 specialist professionals providing audit, tax, technology and systems, strategy and performance improvement, risk management, corporate finance, business recovery, forensic and accounting services. Our people are based in Auckland, Hamilton, Rotorua, Wellington, Christchurch, Queenstown and Dunedin, serving clients that range from New Zealand’s largest companies and public sector organisations to smaller businesses with ambition to grow. For more information about Deloitte in New Zealand, look to our website [www.deloitte.co.nz](http://www.deloitte.co.nz).

© 2022. For information, contact Deloitte Touche Tohmatsu Limited.

5



**TITLE:** Future Harbour Remediation Business Case

**From:** Ruben Wylie, Land Management Programme Manager

**Authorised by** Jonathan Gibbard, Pou Tiaki Taiao – Group Manager Environmental  
**Group Manager/s:** Services, on 13 April 2022

---

### Executive summary/Whakarāpopototanga

Council's Equalisation Reserve was created to represent accumulated surplus forestry income and includes the 2021/22 operational surplus. These reserved funds are intended to provide future funding for any council activity, with a view to smoothing future rating increases. At the time of writing, the Equalisation Reserve has an available balance of \$366,000. It is recommended that \$300,000 of that balance is allocated to fund a harbour remediation business case.

---

### Recommendations

1. That the report 'Future Harbour Remediation Business Case' by Ruben Wylie, Land Management Programme Manager and dated 11 April 2022, be received.
  2. That Council approve the allocation of \$300,000 from the Equalisation Reserve to fund the development of a Harbour Remediation Business Case, to be commenced during the 2023/2024 financial year.
  3. That, prior to undertaking the Harbour Remediation Business Case, staff present an options assessment to Council in order to gain Council approval to confirm which harbour(s) will be subject to the business case and the scope and purpose.
- 

### Options

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
1	Undertake a business case utilising the equalisation reserve.	A business case will help Council, mana whenua and communities to understand the benefits and investment requirements necessary to achieve long term community outcomes for water quality and sustainable land use.  Using the equalisation reserve means there will be no rating impact associated with progressing the business case.	This option will result in a substantial reduction in the equalisation reserve.
2	Undertake a business case utilising other budgets.	Would retain the Equalisation Reserve balance for other purposes.	This is not considered a viable option because it would be reducing budgets from other projects that NRC has

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
			committed to deliver through the LTP.
3	Do not undertake a business case.	This option would mean Council retain the balance of the equalisation reserve, providing a larger buffer to smooth out any rating increases in the future.	Business cases are effective decision making tools for understanding investment options, risks and benefits. Without a business case, there is a risk of sub-optimal investment and limited buy in from potential future funding partners.

The staff's recommended option is Option 1

## Considerations

### 1. Environmental Impact

The development of the business case itself will not have an environmental impact. However, it will lay the foundations for a potentially substantial investment towards future catchment scale remediation initiatives.

### 2. Community views

Community views are not known, however it's anticipated the community would be supportive of an approach that seeks to optimise environmental benefits relative to investment.

### 3. Māori impact statement

It is considered that Māori would be supportive of the potential for greater environmental outcomes that are anticipated through the development of a harbour remediation business case.

### 4. Financial implications

The proposed business case is to be funded via the Equalisation Reserve. Council's Equalisation Reserve was created to represent accumulated surplus forestry income and includes the 2021/22 operational surplus. These reserved funds are intended to provide future funding for any council activity, with a view to smoothing future rating increases. At the time of writing, the Equalisation Reserve has a balance of \$366,000. This excludes the Equalisation Reserve floor of \$250,000, which was recently established to enable a minimum reserve balance to be able to fund unforeseen and unbudgeted forest activities (i.e. forest infrastructure repairs due to storm damage).

It is recommended that \$300,000 of Equalisation Reserve balance is allocated to fund harbour remediation business case(s).

### 5. Implementation issues

It is anticipated that the business case development will require substantial staff input. This will prove challenging within the Environmental Services Group due to the heavy workload to

implement the freshwater reforms and significant staff turnover within the Land Management Team. It is therefore recommended that the business case development commence in the 2023/2024 financial year.

Critical to the success of any business case is the need to build strong partnerships between mana whenua, local and central government and key stakeholders. Our learnings from the Kaipara Moana Remediation Programme process is that a great business case is only as good as the partnerships that are built around it. It is critical that any business case is progressed within a partnership model and at a pace that allows everyone to come along for the journey. While the technical development of a business case can be outsourced to consultants, the development of those relationships and partnerships will require strong staff support.

At the stage of confirming which harbour(s) will be the subject of a business case, council will also need to consider staff resourcing. This may include the need for an additional fixed term role.

## **6. Significance and engagement**

In relation to section 79 of the Local Government Act 2002, this decision is of low significance when assessed against council's significance and engagement policy because it is part of council's day to day activities. This does not mean that this matter is not of significance to tangata whenua and/or individual communities, but that council is able to make decisions relating to this matter without undertaking further consultation or engagement.

## **7. Policy, risk management and legislative compliance**

There are no known policy, risk or legislative compliance issues associated with this decision.

---

## **Background/Tuhinga**

The Northland's 15 harbour systems play a major role in supporting the environmental, cultural, economic and social wellbeing of the Northland community and represent expansive tracts of unique ecosystems critical to indigenous plants and animals. Moreover, these harbours are of significant traditional, cultural, historical and spiritual importance to tangata whenua. Northland harbours, and the rivers that flow into them, are affected by contaminants, particularly sediments from pastoral systems and stream bank erosion. As a consequence, the mauri of many of our harbours, and their associated freshwater tributaries, is degraded.

*Te Pae Tawhiti: Our vision* is a summary of the activities council plans to deliver as set out in the Long Term Plan 2021-2031 and council strategies, in the context of council's longer term aims for the region. One of the key community outcomes within *Te Pae Tawhiti* is that the quality of water in Northland's fresh and coastal waters is clean and abundant, supporting a healthy environment and the needs of our people. In order to achieve that outcome, and in conjunction with its regulatory functions, the Council will need to partner with landowners, mana whenua and Central Government to support regulatory and non-regulatory initiatives aimed at improving water quality across northland.

In this report, it is recommended that Council allocate funding towards the development of harbour remediation business case(s), to support Council, mana whenua and Central Government investment partners to identify strategic investment options, associated costs and net benefits for harbour scale remediation programmes.

### Harbour Remediation Business Case

The Kaipara Moana Remediation programme (KMR) represents a hugely ambitious investment into the remediation of the Kaipara Harbour. A comprehensive business case we first developed to enable Kaipara Uri, Council, and Central Government to establish the best approach for remediating the harbour. The purpose of the business case was to examine options to remediate the Kaipara Moana and set out the strategic, environmental, cultural, economic, financial, commercial and management cases for its remediation.

It is recommended that a similar business case is completed for a yet to be determined harbour(s) in the Northland Region. A harbour remediation business case would set the platform for potential future investment decision by:

- describing of the challenges facing the harbour from an environmental and cultural perspective;
- demonstration of the need for a sustained and coordinated programme of works at scale to reduce contaminants entering the waterways and improve water quality;
- analyses of the benefit in remediating the moana, including direct environmental benefits but also wider wellbeing impacts; and
- analyses the focus of remediation, including the types of activities that could be undertaken and how, and a preferred approach.

The criteria and analysis for determining which harbour should be subject to the business case is to be developed and workshopped with Council in 2023.

---

### Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Nil

**TITLE: New Land Management Approach**

**From:** Ruben Wylie, Land Management Programme Manager

**Authorised by** Jonathan Gibbard, Pou Tiaki Taiao – Group Manager Environmental  
**Group Manager/s:** Services, on 13 April 2022

---

**Executive summary/Whakarāpopototanga**

Significant and ongoing changes have occurred at the national level and on the ground that have led to the need for council to review the current focus of its land management activities and services. To date the land team has focused on working with those who have proactively approached council for support and towards fencing of waterways. With new regulatory requirements coming and new digital tools available, it is timely and appropriate for council to reconsider how it best targets and prioritises the allocation of its limited resources to areas that will benefit most from these services.

This paper sets out staff recommendations for reprioritising the land team's delivery model, with the aim to provide greater emphasis on priority environmental outcomes.

---

**Recommendation(s)**

1. That the report 'New Land Management Approach' by Ruben Wylie, Land Management Programme Manager and dated 12 April 2022, be received.
2. That Council approve revisions to the Environment Fund criteria set out in this report by:
  - a. ceasing to support stock exclusion activities as and when they become statutory requirements, with the exception of fencing wetlands and where mitigation measures exceed what is required by regulation;
  - b. adopting revised mitigation treatments as set out in Table 1 of this report.
3. That Council approve the new Catchment Funding to be included in the general Environment Fund and that the additional funding is made available for:
  - a. general Environment Fund grants;
  - b. supporting tangata whenua and catchment groups for those activities set out in Table 2 of this report.
4. That Council acknowledges that there are no additional staff resources to deliver the new Catchment Funding and that this will therefore be advanced as resources become available.
5. That Council approve the co-funding of 70% of the total project value for approved Environment Fund grant applications on Māori freehold land (as defined in Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993).
6. That Council approve that, provided Councils overall year end budget is in surplus, all unallocated Environment Fund budget, including new Catchment Funding, is to be retained within the Land Management Reserve.
7. That Council approve the funding of multi-year Environment Fund projects with approval for any associated budget carry-forwards to be delegated to the Chair and that any multi-year projects are capped at a maximum term of three years.
8. That Council approve the following Environment Fund financial delegations to the Chair, with allocation above those thresholds requiring a council decision:

- a. \$40,000 maximum for any single year allocation.
  - b. \$20,000 maximum per year for any multi- year allocation.
9. That Council approve transitional arrangement for all Northland Regional Council priority catchment groups by:
    - a. Continuing to support Priority Catchment Groups over the 2022/2023 financial year with a focus to enable them to become self-governing;
    - b. Discontinuing on-going funding support at the conclusion of the 2021/2022 financial year.
  10. That properties located in the area administered by the Kaipara Moana Remediation Programme will not be eligible for grant funding or land management services that duplicate the functions of the Kaipara Moana Remediation Programme.
  11. That staff review the new Land Management Approach and report to Council by December 2023, with the opportunity to make any adjustments and refinements.

## Options

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
1	Status quo land management approach.	Environment Fund likely to be overallocated each year as demand for riparian fencing increases.	Limited optimisation of Environment Fund investment.  Environment Fund funding activities that are required by regulation.
2	Recommended Approach	Provides for diversification and optimisation of Environment Fund grants, greater support for Māori and improved decision making for deciding on grant applications.	Represents a transition away from working with willing landowners, which will mean more resourcing is required to engage and work with landowners. Brings the risk of under allocation of the Environment Fund, particularly given the Land Team is under capacity.

The staff's recommended option is 2.

## Considerations

### 1. Environmental Impact

The recommended changes to the land management delivery model is expected to bring about improved environment outcomes because it will enable a greater diversity of mitigation options aimed at bringing about improvements in freshwater quality. Moreover, given stock exclusion from water bodies is now becoming a regulatory requirement across New Zealand, providing greater diversity of approaches will enable landowners to seek council support to compliment freshwater improvement initiatives required through regulations.

## **2. Community views**

Community views on the proposed changes to the Land Management approach are not known, however it is anticipated the community would be supportive of an approach that seeks to optimise environmental benefits relative to investment.

## **3. Māori impact statement**

It is considered that Māori would be supportive of greater environmental outcomes that are anticipated through the revised approach recommended in this report, in addition to the additional funding support for multiply owned Māori freehold land.

## **4. Financial implications**

The proposed changes to the land management delivery model is to be completed utilising existing budgets approved under the 2021-2031 Long Term Plan and so there will be no immediate material financial implications.

## **5. Implementation issues**

Implementation of the recommendations contained within this report will be a challenge in light of the current resourcing constraints within the Land Management Team. The implications will be the potential for under allocation of the Environment Fund. Moreover, the team may have limited capacity to engage with landowners outside those that engage with NRC on their own will. These challenges carry the risk of under allocation of the Environment Fund.

In addition, there is no capacity within the Land Management Team to deliver the new catchment funding approach. This will mean that this new funding stream will be progressed as resourcing becomes available.

## **6. Significance and engagement**

In relation to section 79 of the Local Government Act 2002, this decision is of low significance when assessed against council's significance and engagement policy because it is part of council's day to day activities. This does not mean that this matter is not of significance to tangata whenua and/or individual communities, but that council is able to make decisions relating to this matter without undertaking further consultation or engagement.

## **7. Policy, risk management and legislative compliance**

There are no known policy or legislative compliance issues associated with this decision. The main risks of this decision are outlined in the Implementation Issues and Financial Implications sections of this report.

---

## **Background/Tuhinga**

The land management team has been providing advice and support to landowners to enable them to achieve improved environmental outcomes on their land for many years. Traditionally this work has concentrated on working with individual landowners in an advisory capacity, with a core focus directed towards supporting the preparation of Farm Environment Plans, the delivery of the Environment Fund grants to fence off waterways and delivering soil conservation treatments, including the establishment and operation of a poplar and willow nursery.

The land management team's delivery model is generally based on working with landowners that proactively make contact with council to seek advice and support towards improving land management practices. This model has resulted in a strong uptake of farm environment plans and

Environment Fund grants, in addition to the development of good working relationships with landowners and sector groups. However, the approach lacks the structure needed to target resourcing towards environmental priorities. This lack of prioritisation means there are significant opportunities to optimise the way the team directs its resourcing to maximise environmental benefit and to better align its work focus with the strategic directions of council and the changing national regulatory environment.

This report sets out a proposal for a revised land management approach, with the aim of achieving the following guiding objectives.

- Water quality in Te Taitokerau is improved through the provision of land management services and funding in areas that will provide the most benefit for the improvement of water quality from these services.
- The land management team supports and empowers tangata whenua, landowners and catchment groups to achieve Te Taitokerau long-term aspirations for sustainable land use and freshwater quality.
- Environment grant funding supports a prioritised range of environmental improvement initiatives that achieve multiple environmental benefits.

### **Funding statutory requirements**

Changes to the Environment Fund criteria are required to support a wider variety of land mitigations and to reflect changes in the statutory requirements that are being placed on landowners. In that regard, it is recommended that Council transition away from funding stock exclusion from waterways for farming activities where stock exclusion is a statutory requirement. It is recommended that the timing for this transition is aligned with the timelines contained within the Resource Management (Stock Exclusion) Regulations 2020. Dates and timing for those regulatory requirements are summarised in Attachment 1. The implications of this transitional arrangement are as follows:

- the Environment Fund to be allocated over the 2022-2023 financial year to co-fund stock exclusion based on the merits of any given grant application, irrespective of farming activity type.
- From July 2023 onwards, some farming activities will be captured by the regulation, and so these will not be co-funded.
- From July 2025 onwards, a full suite of farming activities will be subject to the stock exclusion regulations.

The exception to the above, is the ongoing support for fencing of wetlands and where mitigation measures substantially exceed statutory requirements. Please see Table 1 below for more details.

### **Mitigation approaches**

As Council transition away from co-funding stock exclusion activities required by regulation, it will be necessary for Council to diversify the portfolio of land mitigation options it will fund. The recommended mitigation approaches that are subject to the revised Environment Fund are set out in Table 1 below.

**Table 1.** Proposed Environment Fund mitigation approaches.



Treatment	Description
Erosion treatment	Sediment from erosion on farmland is one of the most significant contaminant in Northland's waterways. Erosion treatment options such as poplar pole planting, retirement fencing, and afforestation are important mitigation options for improving water quality.
Stock exclusion from wetlands and wetland enhancement.	Supporting landowners to maintain and protect wetlands is considered an appropriate mitigation approach given the substantial amount of wetland loss that has occurred in Northland and their ability to hold and retain sediment. This is despite the regulatory requirements to exclude stock from these ecosystems. Moreover, those regulatory requirements only apply to wetlands that exceed 500m <sup>2</sup> in area. Support to exclude stock from smaller wetlands will also help with the overall protection of wetlands across the region. In addition, there are likely to be opportunities to enhance wetlands through pest plant control and planting and opportunities to fence and enhance wetlands as a package of work.
Wetland creation	Northland has lost many of its wetlands through drainage. New wetland creation through fencing and returning water tables back to natural levels may be an appropriate means of enabling wetlands to be created and thus start to reverse the current trend of wetland loss.
Stock exclusion that exceeds the statutory requirements	Stock exclusion that exceeds the statutory requirements (for example substantially exceeding the buffer between the stream bank and the fence line) could provide enhanced environmental benefits over statutory requirements.
Biodiversity enhancement adjacent to or within outstanding waterbodies or waterbodies with high biodiversity values	<p>Biodiversity enhancement activities can have major flow on effects to improve stream health. Improved biodiversity within riparian margins can support a more diverse, resilient and intact stream ecosystem. Key mitigation options could include riparian planting, pest plant control and improved management of fish passage.</p> <p>Given planting can be costly compared to other mitigation options, it is proposed that planting is limited to outstanding waterbodies, top 150 wetlands and streams adjacent to mapped Terrestrial Top 30 Sites (e.g. sites that are in the top 30% ranking by biodiversity potential).</p>

Please refer to Table 3 below for further details on application assessment criteria and associated weighting.

### **Tangata whenua and catchment group grant funding**

During deliberations on the 2021-2031 Long Term Plan, council approved the following extra funding to support work in catchment: \$311,000 in 2022/2023 and \$500,000 each year following. The criteria to allocating that extra funding was not determined at the time of deliberations. It is recommended that the fund is incorporated into the general Environment Fund budget; and that the Environment Fund is made available to build capacity and capability with tangata whenua and catchment groups to plan, gain funding for and implement multiyear catchment improvement initiatives.

Proposed eligible funding projects are outlined in Table 2 below.

**Table 2.** Proposed eligible catchment funding projects

Project	Description
Professional services	<p>This would include professional services for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To support the development of catchment management plans and grant funding applications.</li> <li>• Technical work to support prioritisation of mitigation investment approaches.</li> <li>• GIS analysis and mapping</li> </ul>
Engagement and awareness	<p>Approaches to improve awareness and build understanding and engagement amongst the wider community in respect of the catchment work underway. This includes initial work to build relationship between industries, landowners, hapū and marae to share values and aspirations.</p>
Support for Kaitiaki engagement	<p>Support for both engagement with kaitiaki and for kaitiaki to engage with one another in order to articulate catchment values.</p>
Training	<p>Support for catchment group members to develop skills directly linked with the catchment management initiatives. Training could include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Technical aspects associated mitigation options e.g. planting, wetland management;</li> <li>• Upskilling in critical technical skills e.g. simple GIS.</li> <li>• Water quality monitoring using community toolkits.</li> </ul>
On the ground mahi	<p>This would include the same mitigation measure identified in Table 1 available for Environment Fund support for individual landowners. This work would be for tangata whenua and catchment groups to award. It is proposed that the criteria for this follow the same criteria for the Environment Fund, including the timing and transitional arrangements. Greater flexibility may be required, especially initially, so that funding can support what tangata whenua and catchment groups want to deliver.</p>

For the avoidance of doubt, tangata whenua and catchment group funding:

- a) is available for support staff to deliver the functions listed in Table 3; and
- b) is not available for capital expenditure (e.g. purchase of equipment).

In order to ensure the funding is allocated appropriately, it is proposed that all applications must demonstrate that there is collaboration between landowners/community groups or marae/hapū within the catchment with a view to working together to improve water quality in the long term. Please refer to Table 3 below for further details on application assessment criteria and associated weighting.

### Environment Fund application assessment approach

It is proposed that all Environment Fund grant applications are assessed using a weighted scoring. Such an approach would enable the assessment of qualitative criteria in an objective and

collaborative way by ranking projects relative to an agreed set of criteria and assigning each criteria agreed weightings that reflect their relative importance to achieving the project objective.

By having clear criteria, it enables a clearer application process, with applications specifically addressing the criteria against which they will be assessed. The benefits of the proposed revised approach are that it enables council to set the strategic direction in respect of the grant funding awards, whilst the operational work associated with assessing and decision making on application is undertaken through an efficient and effective process. Any applications advanced that are outside the agreed criteria (or exceed a the delegations of the chair) would require a council decision. The proposed criteria are set out in Table 3 below.

The Land Team already has a number of landowners on board for grant funding over the 2022/2023 financial year and this has been undertaken under the old criteria. In addition, the new criteria requires the development of new reporting templates that review and assess each application against the criteria. The Land Team is also severely short staffed at present and development and implementation of a new reporting and assessment approach would be a major challenge for the team currently. For these reasons, it is proposed to give effects to the new assessment approach for applications lodged during 2023/2024 financial year.

**Table 3.** Proposed Environment Fund assessment criteria.

Assessment Criteria	Description	Weighting
Demonstrated collaboration with neighbouring properties	Extent to which the project takes into account the wider catchment and demonstrated collaboration with neighbouring properties or landowners within the same catchment.	10%
Benefits to improved water quality	The extent to which the project will contribute to improved water quality within the catchment in the long-term taking into account relevant available information.	50%
Extent to which the project meets wider environmental objectives	How will the project support the mitigation of other environmental issues? For example, will the project have co-benefits associated with increase climate resilience, improved biodiversity, improved coastal management, reduced greenhouse gas emissions, pest control.	20%
Extent to which the project supports social or cultural wellbeing	Extent to which the project meets the objectives and values of the wider community and/or mana whenua. For example, is the project consistent with the wider catchment goals of the community, is the project supported by mana whenua; is it specifically identified as a priority by marae, hapū or iwi and does it enhance their cultural values, interests and associations.	10%
Prioritisation ranking	Staff are in the process of developing a prioritisation framework, based on	10%

Assessment Criteria	Description	Weighting
	scientific evidence and greater use of current and future digital tools, to guide work effort of land management advisors. As the framework is still in development, and is yet to be field tested, staff intend to use the initial output as an assessment criteria for Environment Fund applications. Doing so will give a practical application of the framework and in doing so enable staff to ground truth the framework whilst giving applications in priority areas more weight when it comes to grant decision making. An outline of the initial framework is attached as Attachment 2.	

### Supporting Māori freehold land

Traditionally the Environment Fund has had limited uptake within multiply owned Māori land blocks. While there are likely to be many reasons for this, one of the key inhibitors of Environment Fund uptake on Māori land is the requirement to co-fund 50% of land mitigation work. Staff recommend increasing the level of co-funding to 70% for Environment Fund initiatives located on multiple owned Māori land blocks. Doing so may go some way to increasing the level of uptake of grant funding, and in doing so provide greater levels of support for land management initiatives to be implemented on whenua Māori.

### Multi-year projects and carry forwards

The additional grant funding made available through the new catchment fund, coupled with a transition away from supporting primarily riparian fencing projects, creates an opportunity to substantially diversify the types of land mitigation treatments Council invests in alongside landowners. A number of the mitigation options proposed in Table 1 and 2 represent activities that would need to span across multiple years. For example, wetland protection and enhancement could include fencing, pest control, water table management, and planting. A project of that nature would benefit from sequencing key project tasks across multiple financial years in order to enable flexibility with landowners and to align implementation with any seasonal constraint (e.g. ensuring that planting occurs during the optimal planting season). This approach also aligns with the approach adopted by the Kaipara Moana Remediation Programme where multi year remediation programmes are negotiated with landowners as a reflection of landowners ability to contribute co-funding and as an efficient and effective means of engagement by staff.

In addition, supporting Environment Fund delivery on whenua Māori will require that staff work with tangata whenua to deliver the Environment Fund in a holistic manner bearing in mind the role of Māori as kaitiaki. Committing grant funding to single year projects will be a substantial inhibitor.

With all of the above considered, staff recommend Council provide some degree of flexibility with Environment Fund carry forward in order to enable the funding of multi-year projects. It is recommended that approval of multiyear projects, and associated carry forwards, rest with the Chair capped at a maximum of \$20,000 per annum and for a maximum of three years.

### Financial delegations

To enable the efficient and effective allocation of the Environment Fund it is recommended that the Chair be authorised to approve grant fund allocations up to a maximum of \$40,000 for any single application within a single financial year and up to a maximum of \$20,000 per year for multi-year applications up to a maximum of 3 years (i.e. maximum allocation of \$60,000 over 3 years). For the avoidance of doubt, any approval of applications seeking funding above these financial thresholds will require a council decision.

### **Land Management Reserve**

The Land Management Reserve was created to allow Council to set aside unutilised Land Management rates for the purpose of funding projects in future years. The Land Management Reserve has essentially been fully utilised on Freshwater Improvement Fund projects and has a remaining balance of \$17,000.

The Land Management Reserve is a highly valuable funding mechanism for supporting environmental initiatives. Staff recommend that all unallocated Environment Fund Budgets (includes budgets for work in catchments) is retained within the Land Management Reserve, provided Councils overall year end budget is in surplus.


### **Priority catchment groups**

NRC has worked with communities in several 'priority' catchments in Northland to develop catchment plans to better manage freshwater. The catchment specific provisions contained in the Proposed Regional Plan for Northland are an outcome of the collaborative planning processes. Following the notification of the Proposed Regional Plan the priority catchment groups transitioned to a more operational nature with each of the five catchment groups awarded \$10,000 per annum to invest in catchment initiatives within their respective catchment areas. There are presently no investment criteria for this funding and allocations currently require staff to identify a project and manage the delivery. Whilst the priority catchment groups have enabled NRC to engage with stakeholders with an interest in a priority catchment, the groups have been led and resourced by the NRC, which has proven to require substantial staff time to ensure the groups run effectively.

With the above context, it is recommended that the catchment groups have achieved what they initially set out to and it is proposed that the priority catchment groups are supported to transition (if they want to) to becoming autonomous and self-governing. If they do not, then the groups will need to wind up. It is proposed that staff engage with the groups over the 2022/2023 financial year to support those who wish to transition to self-governance to do so. Some groups, such as the Pouto Catchment Group, may continue but in a different form, perhaps more performing a liaison type function. These considerations will be part of the transitional engagement activity by staff.

---

### **Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga**

Attachment 1: Summary of Livestock timing [↓](#) 

Attachment 2: Proposal datasets for prioritisation [↓](#) 

Summary of Livestock timing

Stock type	Freshwater body type	Slope	Date
Pigs, dairy cattle	Lakes and rivers >1m	Any terrain	1 July 2023
Intensively grazed beef and deer	Lakes and rivers >1m	Any terrain	1 July 2023
All beef, dairy, dairy support cattle, deer and pigs	Wetlands identified in a regional plan	Any terrain	1 July 2023
Dairy support cattle	Lakes and rivers >1m	Any terrain	1 July 2025
Beef and deer (non-intensive)	Lakes and rivers >1m	Low slope land	1 July 2025
All beef, dairy, dairy support cattle, deer and pigs	Wetlands that support a population of threatened species	Any terrain	1 July 2025
All beef, dairy, dairy support cattle, deer and pigs	Natural wetlands 0.05ha or larger	Low slope land	1 July 2025

Proposal datasets for prioritisation framework.

Dataset	Description
SedNet and Physiographics inherent sediment generation potential	This dataset provides the results of an erosion model that predicts the generation and transport of sediment through river networks. The model outputs can be used as a proxy for predicting erosion risk and find sediment in waterbodies.
Outstanding lakes and rivers	These are freshwater bodies (lakes and rivers) that the Northland Regional Council has identified as having outstanding values and that require a high degree of protection under the regional plan.
Top Wetlands	305 of Northland's highest value, currently mapped, wetlands were ranked using a number of weighted criteria including size, representativeness, threatened species, diversity, integrity and LENZ category. In total 154 wetlands scored 50 or more out of 100 and these are listed as the region's Top Wetlands.
Recreational bathing sites	These are point data depicting the location of recreational bathing sites monitored as part of the Recreational Swimming Water Quality Programme. This layer is used as a proxy for depicting the most popular swimming sites in Northland.
Water supply catchments	These are the catchments located upstream of intakes for public or community water supply schemes. Fine sediment can present a major risk to water supply schemes because it can reduce the effectiveness of water treatment plants. Given over half the Northland region relays on treated water supply schemes, improving water quality in these catchments is considered an appropriate prioritisation criteria.
Biodiversity ranking – top 30% rivers and streams	This dataset provides the relative ranking of the biodiversity values derived from a ranking analysis of indigenous-dominated freshwater ecosystems for the Northland Region. The dataset provides the location of top 30% rivers and streams in terms of biodiversity values and is a useful tool to identifying where to prioritise work effort to maximise biodiversity outcomes.
Degraded waterbodies based on modelled MCI and turbidity	Provides model-based predictions for various water quality attributes. This dataset will identify streams with predicted values below the national bottom line (attribute Band D) for MCI and turbidity. MCI is the key ecological health predictor and turbidity is a proxy for fine sediment, which the leading contaminant in Northland waterways.
Degraded waterbodies based on <i>E.coli</i> , but only in water bodies upstream of recreational bathing sites	This data provides model-based predictions for <i>E.coli</i> . This data set will identify predicted <i>E.coli</i> values below the national bottom line <b>and</b> where the river segments are located of recreational bathing sites.

**TITLE:** Request to Carry Forward Operating Expenditure Budget for S-Map

**From:** Ruben Wylie, Land Management Programme Manager and Lester Bridson, Far North Land Manager

**Authorised by Group Manager/s:** Jonathan Gibbard, Pou Tiaki Taiao – Group Manager Environmental Services, on 13 April 2022

---

### Executive summary/Whakarāpopototanga

S-map is a national soils information tool maintained by Manaaki Whenua and currently covers approximately 50% of NZ's agricultural productive land. S-map delivers substantially better soils information compared to existing fundamental soils layer, providing comprehensive quantitative data and improved accuracy of soils information.

Through the 2021-31 LTP, council committed \$1.2M (over 5 years) to support the expansion of S-Map across the Northland region. In partnership with Manaaki Whenua Landcare Research, Northland Regional Council sought an additional contribution of \$6M from MPI, however this was later declined leaving a significant project shortfall.

Advice from MPI staff indicates the Sustainable Futures and Fibers Partnership Fund is an appropriate funding avenue to support S-Map. However significant co-funding is required from applicants. Work has commenced on preparing an application for submission later in 2022. A decision on the application is unlikely before late 2023.

Manaaki Whenua Landcare Research is currently planning reduced scale surveys in Northland utilising \$1M funding provided to Manaaki Whenua Landcare Research from the Ministry for the Environment. The bulk of that work is intended to be completed over the 2022/2023 financial year. Staff will be providing work in kind support by assisting with field work and arranging access permissions with landowners.

It is recommended that funds allocated through the 2021/22 and 2022/23 LTP years be transferred into the Land Management Reserve, provided council's year end budget is in surplus, and held until sufficient central government funding has been secured to co-fund regional scale roll out of S-map.

---

### Recommendation(s)

1. That the report 'Request to Carry Forward Operating Expenditure Budget for S-Map' by Ruben Wylie, Land Management Programme Manager and Lester Bridson, Far North Land Manager and dated 12 April 2022, be received.
2. That council approve the transfer of LTP Year 1 and 2 budget allocations for S-Map to the Land Management Reserve, provided council's year end budget is in surplus.

---

### Options

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
1	Transfer allocated funds into Land Management Reserve.	Ensures funding options maintained to enable co-funding of S-Map alongside MPI.	Risk that S-Map co-funding from MPI is not secured.



No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
2	Use allocated funds to support reduced scale S-Map.	Ensures the funds are spent.	LTP funding only sufficient to cover 10-15% of region.

The staff's recommended option is 1.

---

## Considerations

### 1. Environmental Impact

Accurate soils information is critical to informing on-farm practices aimed at reducing sediment, nutrients and other contaminants reaching our waterways. Regional S-map will provide baseline soil data for freshwater farm plans (FW-FP) required through the National Policy Statement.

The protection of highly productive soils in primary production zones is also important, and in the Regional Policy Statement it looks to TA's to ensure the production potential of our most versatile soils are protected from the impacts of subdivision, use and development.

Partial regional coverage of S-Map would limit Regional and District council's ability to use this tool as a resource to support sound regional decision making.

### 2. Community views

The economic benefit of S-map information to current users is estimated nationally at \$19.5M per year and this is growing as coverage is expanded. Analysis of online searches in S-map Online demonstrate that Northlanders are looking for quality soil information and through the LTP process there is an expectation that S-map will be developed for the whole region.

### 3. Māori impact statement

Partial regional coverage of S-Map has the potential to disadvantage Māori land blocks which remain un-mapped.

### 4. Financial implications

As part of the 2021-31 LTP, Council committed \$1.2M over five years to support the development of S-Map in partnership with Manaaki Whenua Landcare Research. The total project cost was estimated at \$7M, with the additional funding expected to come from MPI's S-map expansion project. However this funding did not eventuate. MPI staff have indicated the project is a good fit for the Sustainable Futures and Fibers Fund and as such staff are working with Manaaki Whenua to prepare an application for submission in late 2022, with an outcome likely by late 2023.

Manaaki Whenua Landcare Research has begun work on a reduced scale mapping exercise utilising approximately \$1M funding awarded by the Ministry for the Environment. The funding awarded to Manaaki Whenua Landcare Research does not require co-funding from NRC and so staff propose that Council retains the S-map funding allocated for LTP years 1 and 2 until any outcome from SFFF application is known. This effectively means council will have \$460,000 in reserve in preparation for commencing delivery of S-Map in the 2023/2024 financial year.

There are no known financial implications of carrying forward the Year 1 and 2 S-map funding, provided council's year end budget is in surplus. Carrying this funding forward, rather than spending it on small scale mapping in the interim, will ensure that NRC can leverage this contribution to gain region wide coverage.

**5. Implementation issues**

There are no known implementation issues associated with this decision. Should S-Map co-funding not be received, then a further council decision will be required as to how best to allocate the budgeted funds.

**6. Significance and engagement**

In relation to section 79 of the Local Government Act 2002, this decision is considered to be of low significance when assessed against council's significance and engagement policy because it has previously been consulted on and provided for in council's Long-Term Plan and/or is part of council's day to day activities. This does not mean that this matter is not of significance to tangata whenua and/or individual communities, but that council is able to make decisions relating to this matter without undertaking further consultation or engagement

**7. Policy, risk management and legislative compliance**

The recommendations in this report are consistent with council policy or any legislative requirements.

---

**Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga**

Nil

**TITLE: Council submission on ETS changes - retrospective approval**

**From:** Justin Murfitt, Strategic Policy Specialist

**Authorised by** Jonathan Gibbard, Pou Tiaki Taiao – Group Manager Environmental  
**Group Manager/s:** Services, on 14 April 2022

---

**Executive summary/Whakarāpopototanga**

This report seeks retrospective approval by council for a submission on potential changes to the Emissions Trading Scheme (ETS) set out in a government discussion document: *Managing exotic afforestation incentives - A discussion document on proposals to change forestry settings in the New Zealand Emissions Trading Scheme*.

The proposals include an option to exclude exotic species from the permanent forest category in the ETS - meaning financial incentives for permanent exotic forestry would be significantly reduced. This could adversely impact the effectiveness of council and landowner soil conservation / sediment mitigation efforts by reducing financial incentives provided by carbon rewards earned through the ETS. It would also limit a good land use option for parts of Northland where establishing permanent forests can bring water quality and biodiversity co-benefits.

The proposals are of significant interest to council and warrant a submission, however the consultation timeline did not align well with the council meeting schedule (submissions closed 22 April) and the draft submission was not able to be considered in a formal council meeting. Therefore, a draft submission was developed and circulated to councillors and non-elected TTMAC members for comment. The draft submission was revised in response to feedback received and approved by the Executive Leadership Team under delegated authority before being lodged with government.

The delegation requires that council retrospectively approve the submission at the next council meeting. The submission is **Attached** and retrospective approval is sought from council.

---

**Recommendation(s)**

1. That the report 'Council submission on ETS changes - retrospective approval' by Justin Murfitt, Strategic Policy Specialist and dated 12 April 2022, be received.
2. That council retrospectively approve the attached submission on the discussion document: Managing exotic afforestation incentives.

---

**Options**

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
1	Council retrospectively approves the submission	The government is aware of council concerns with the proposals and councils submission informs government decisions.	None

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
2	Council does not approve the submission (the submission would be withdrawn)	None	The government would not formally recognise the submission and councils concerns would not inform government decisions.

The staff's recommended option is Option 1

---

## Considerations

### 1. Environmental Impact

### 2. Community views

The government proposals / subject matter of the submission is likely to be of interest to communities and could influence carbon sequestration and land use options for landowners – however, the decision to retrospectively approve the council submission does not require public / community consultation.

### 3. Māori impact statement

The government proposals / subject matter of the submission is likely to be of interest to Māori and could influence carbon sequestration and land use options. A draft of the submission was circulated to non-elected members of the Te Taikerau Māori and Council Working Party for comment prior to being lodged. However, the decision to retrospectively approve the council submission does not require consultation.

### 4. Financial implications

There are no financial implications associated with this decision.

### 5. Implementation issues

There are no implementation issues associated with this decision

### 6. Significance and engagement

### 7. Policy, risk management and legislative compliance

There are no known legislative compliance or risks associated with this decision.

---

## Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Attachment 1: NRC submission - changes to the ETS [↓](#) 

## Submission



**To:** Ministry for Primary Industries  
[mpi.forestry@mpi.govt.nz](mailto:mpi.forestry@mpi.govt.nz)

**By:** Northland Regional Council

**On:** Discussion document - Managing exotic afforestation incentives

### 1. Introduction

- 1.1. Northland Regional Council (NRC) appreciates the opportunity to submit on the proposals to amend the Emissions Trading Scheme (ETS) set out in the consultation document: *'Managing exotic afforestation incentives- A discussion document on proposals to change forestry settings in the New Zealand Emissions Trading Scheme'* (the discussion document). NRC's submission is made in the interest of promoting the sustainable management of Northland's natural and physical resources and the wellbeing of its people and communities.
- 1.2. We consider Aotearoa NZ needs to keep its options open in the ETS to facilitate effective emissions reduction, promote positive environmental outcomes, and ensure a just and equitable transition to a low carbon economy. We see this as more a question of the purpose and management of the forest in terms of outcomes for people and the environment rather than the species used. Enabling the 'right tree in the right place for the right purpose' is a key element of the recipe needed – the ETS settings have a strong influence in getting the recipe right.
- 1.3. We therefore oppose the option to remove exotics from the permanent forest category completely – in our view this reduces choices for entry into the ETS to either clear-fell or permanent native forests (neither of which are appropriate or viable in certain circumstances). It could also lead to an increase in clear fell plantation as it would be the only option available for exotic forestry – clear-fell regimes are not always appropriate in some landscapes and continuous cover / permanent forestry may be a better option. We therefore support carefully crafted mechanisms to provide exceptions for a range of circumstances where permanent exotics provide an economic land use option with good environmental outcomes that also enable a just transition to a low carbon economy and assist the government to meet net greenhouse gas emission targets.
- 1.4. We support greater incentives for indigenous forests. Analysis we have undertaken indicates current financial incentives strongly favour afforestation with exotic species rather than natives. Our estimates also suggest that permanent afforestation in natives is around 70% more expensive than Pinus Radiata (primarily due to the cost

of trees). When carbon credits are claimed under the ETS the incentive becomes even stronger. Using a carbon price of just \$35 per tonne and the per hectare carbon stock values in the look-up tables, a permanent *Pinus Radiata* forest yields a positive net present value over a thirty-year period. Only when the carbon price exceeds \$145 per tonne, will planting natives begin to yield a positive net return. We'd support:

- a review of the look-up tables to better reflect actual sequestration rates for native species across NZ and the longevity of native species
- Investigation into the potential to 'advance' NZU's ahead of sequestration for permanent native forests to offset high establishment costs.
- Allow stock change carbon measurement for native forests less than 100ha
- Recognising the positive sequestration impacts of controlling browsing pests in the ETS.

1.5. Our key submission points are summarised below:

- Council agrees there is a case to limit the incentives for creating *unmanaged* permanent exotic forests in the ETS - i.e. exotic forests planted for carbon returns only with no production element (such as timber, fibre or biofuels) or management of fire risk, pests and weeds and that results in a neglected and senescent forest state. We therefore do not support the status quo (Option 1).
- However, council does not support Option 2 (a complete ban on exotic species in the permanent forest category of the ETS). Permanent exotic forests (particularly continuous cover forestry) are a good land use option for parts of Aotearoa NZ less suited to clear-fell plantation forestry and where soil conservation and reduction of sediment in fresh and coastal waters is a priority, or where permanent native forests are not viable (financially or otherwise). The returns from carbon under the ETS provide critical financial incentive to change land use from erodible pasture to permanent forest and we would not want to see this incentive removed for productive exotic species that contribute to the regional economy.
- Option 2 also has the potential to increase incentives for new clear-fell exotic forestry regimes and will reduce permanent / continuous cover forestry. This is largely due to mandatory averaging accounting in the ETS tending to benefit clear-fell forestry but 'under-reward' permanent / continuous cover forests. Clear-fell forestry can come with impacts, and we see a place for permanent exotic forests to be kept as an option where landowners seek improved environmental outcomes while producing revenue from their land under a continuous exotic forest cover, or where terrain and costs render clear-fell and native forests less viable. Option 2 could result in large tracts of erosion prone land being left in a 'policy limbo' with limited viable options for beneficial land use change (i.e. the ETS only 'rewards' clear-fell or permanent native forests).
- Council therefore supports a more nuanced version of Option 3A than that proposed with a range of exceptions for exotics in the permanent forest category of the ETS that will retain incentives for positive environmental, social and economic outcomes (including contribution towards net emissions targets). We consider this option best meets the assessment criteria set out on Page 16 of the discussion document.

- We strongly support increased incentives for establishment and management of native forests, both in the ETS and through other mechanisms available to government.
- We support a review of the carbon look-up tables with a recommendation these reflect regional growth rates for species more accurately (rather than applying a national average). We also support look-up tables including sequestration rates for specific native and exotic species so landowners can make more informed decisions.
- We support an option for owners of ETS forests under 100 hectares to be able to use the field measurement approach to measuring their stocks of carbon rather than being restricted to look-up tables.
- We also support work to recognise in the ETS the sequestration potential of wetlands and controlling browsing pests. Riparian planting is another activity that could be better recognised in the ETS but is often discounted on width criteria. We acknowledge He Waka Eke Noa are looking at methods for on-farm accounting and offsetting for the agricultural sector - we strongly support the development of credible tools for measuring on-farm sequestration rates that maximise the ability of landowners to offset emissions and enable a just transition, whether this is through the He Waka Eke Noa programme or the ETS.
- We understand the government may look to provide greater controls on exotic forestry under the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA). Council supports enabling more discretion over: wildfire risk, clear-fell forestry on erosion prone land, plantation forestry on high quality soils / production land, in wetlands and riparian setbacks. Another potential area is control over the total area of a catchment under clear-fell harvest. We also consider there needs to be more explicit ability to manage exotic forestry to meet freshwater target attribute states<sup>1</sup> (not just objectives) developed in regional plans to give effect to the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (NPS-FM). Expanding the scope of the National Environmental Standards for Plantation Forestry (NES-PF) appears to be a logical option.

## 2. Background

- 2.1. Sediment and its impacts on freshwater and coastal receiving environments is one of Northland's most widespread and challenging water quality issues. A large fraction of this sediment (about 50%) is estimated to come from erodible hill country (about 40% of the region's grazing land is classified as highly erodible). This is a landscape scale 'legacy issue', generations in the making and it therefore needs a landscape scale solution which will also take time to deliver. Council has developed and supported a number of projects to address the problem (several with government funding) including:
- The Kaipara Moana Remediation programme, a \$300 million dollar programme to reduce sediment loads to the Kaipara Harbour through farm planning and targeted afforestation
  - Afforestation programme / SHaRP – including grant funding for planting new forests on highly erodible land. These forests include areas of indigenous retirement in addition to production forests using indigenous and exotic species suited to continuous cover forestry. Many of the continuous cover exotic forest

---

<sup>1</sup> Refer Clause 3.11 of the NPS-FM

(composed of high value timber species such as redwoods and eucalyptus) utilise manuka as a nurse crop. Soil conservation generally (e.g. subsidised poplar poles and advice to landowners) and poplar and willow have proven to be the most effective trees to rapidly control erosion, provide animal welfare benefits while maintaining pastoral production. Being fast growing exotic hardwoods, they also sequester carbon rapidly. Allowing these trees to be registered into the ETS while keeping the land in pastoral production provides land use options and considerable incentives for landowners to scale up planting for a range of environmental benefits.

- 2.2.** Council is actively promoting continuous cover forestry through our afforestation programme, targeting highly erodible farmland in the region. Much of this land is not ideal for clear-fell production forestry due to terrain and remoteness. Landowners should be enabled to retain productivity of their land via continuous cover (permanent) forest management using productive exotic species, whereby forest cover is provided in perpetuity via management activities. In our experience many landowners are wanting a forest that produces timber and farm revenue, but that is not clear-felled for environmental reasons. – We also hear native species are often too costly and ETS returns are lower meaning exotics are the most viable option. We recognise that silvicultural practices that maintain the forest canopy and mimic natural successional processes offer improved environmental outcomes compared with rotational (clear-fell) forestry, regardless of whether the trees are exotic or native. Carbon returns through the ETS provide the critical financial incentive to change land use from erodible pasture to permanent forest that supports a range of positive environmental outcomes (soil capital retention, water quality improvement, biodiversity). Averaging accounting (soon to be mandatory for new production forests) does not adequately reward owners of continuous cover forests and only incentivises clear-fell regimes. This could result in a perverse outcome in some areas creating a disincentive for permanent forests. Because exotic plantation forest species offer significantly faster growth and greater economic returns than natives under the ETS, this option will be a critical element for scaling up water quality improvement in many parts of Aotearoa NZ and Northland in particular. To exclude all exotics from the permanent forest category is in our view a step too far and a blunt response to the issue. We expand further below.

## **Submission**

### **3. The Options**

- 3.1.** Council does not support retaining the status quo (Option 1) as there are risks and minimal benefits associated with a proliferation of ‘unmanaged’ permanent exotic forests established for the sole purpose of carbon returns through the ETS. Issues include: wildings, spread of pests / weeds and increase in wildfire risk – there is also the potential for a management legacy left to future generations if large tracts of exotic forests reach the end of their ‘lifespan’ without any harvest or management. ‘Unmanaged’ exotic forests grown specifically for carbon farming have lower socio-



economic benefits than forests managed for productive uses (such as timber, fibre or biofuel). Given they are comparatively low cost to establish and manage, these 'carbon only' forests could become financially viable on land more suitable for primary production as the price of carbon increases. This could essentially 'lock-in' a land use that constrains productive land use options (including production forestry) as the high value of liabilities will make land use change very costly. We consider the risk of this occurring with permanent native forest is lower, given ETS returns are less and establishment costs are higher (i.e. it is far less likely to displace other productive land uses). However, an obligation to manage permanent exotic forests for production (and environmental benefits) resolves the above issues while also retaining the productive capacity of the land. Primary production is the backbone of Northland's economy and a reduction in productive land could impact negatively on our economy. We acknowledge an 'over-supply' of NZUs from large tracts of unproductive 'carbon forest' will weaken the pressure to reduce emissions and affect Aotearoa's ability to transition to a carbon neutral economy, but we note changing the percentage of free allocations of carbon credits to emitters is a very effective means of managing the price of NZU / carbon. A recent example of this is the impact on the NZU price of the reduced free allocations to Tiwai Point aluminium smelter. Allowing appropriately managed permanent exotic forests as an option in the ETS will still retain the ability to control both demand and supply of NZUs while incentivising environmental and economic benefits - this will best provide for a just and equitable transition to a low carbon society.

- 3.2. Despite the above we do not support Option 2 either – we see limiting the permanent forest category to indigenous species only as being too blunt. There are a range of positives that can be provided by well managed permanent / continuous cover exotic forestry as a productive land use. These include water quality / soil conservation improvements, diversification of forestry estate to produce high value timbers, fibre or biofuels, sustainable employment and carbon removals. We consider pursuing Option 2 is likely to have an impact on the effectiveness of soil conservation / sediment reduction efforts (some of which the government has invested heavily in such as the Kaipara Moana Remediation programme). For example, highly erodible land tends to be less productive but typically requires the most effort in terms of sediment mitigation – landowners therefore have comparatively lower returns to fund proportionately higher sediment mitigation costs. Highly erodible land can also be less suitable for clear-fell forestry. The ability to earn NZUs from appropriately managed exotic permanent forest is therefore a powerful incentive for good environmental outcomes in these cases (noting planting permanent native forest is more expensive and the carbon income is much lower). Option 2 therefore risks large tracts of erosion prone land being left in a 'policy limbo' with limited viable land use solutions – this is not consistent with a just and equitable transition to a low carbon economy / society.
- 3.3. We note the government objective for a just transition to a low carbon economy and that the agricultural sector will soon be subject to GHG emissions pricing either through mechanisms developed by He Waka Eke Noa or if necessary, entry into the

ETS. In the event agriculture enters the ETS, the ability to offset agricultural emissions from the agricultural sector using permanent exotic forests in the ETS appears an appropriate option. Limiting the options to clear-fell production forestry or permanent native forestry will not provide a viable solution in many cases.

- 3.4. The government should be particularly cognisant of impacts of the proposals on options for development and use of Māori land and providing for a just transition to a low carbon economy for Māori. We agree with the statements in the discussion document that the proposals could have significant implications for Māori. As we understand it Option 2 in particular has the potential to negatively impact on Māori development / land management aspirations. In our experience these aspirations often include a desire for land use change, however rural Māori land often has limited opportunity for commercial returns with exotic forestry being one of the few viable in many cases. Māori land it is not always suitable for clear-fell regimes nor does this necessarily align with their land use aspirations. NRC's understanding is that permanent exotic forestry is of interest to Māori in Northland. We strongly recommend the options be explored carefully with Māori prior to any decisions being made.
- 3.5. We note the modelled impacts of Option 2 on Aotearoa NZ net GHG emissions targets on Page 14 of the discussion document indicates that the removal of exotics from the ETS permanent forest category will have a significant impact on emissions budgets (due to lower removals from forestry – down from 107 to 66 million tonnes in 2035). This could well lead to the government having to buy even more international units from mitigation undertaken in other jurisdictions. It is far more preferable that this investment be domestic and result in other co-benefits for the environment and society via productive land uses.
- 3.6. In our view Options 1 (status quo) and 2 perform less well against the assessment criteria than Option 3A. In our view Option 2 does not deliver well against several of the assessment criteria – in particular it provides the least environmental benefit (criteria 6) and performs the worst against providing for sequestration to meet emissions budgets and targets (criteria 1). In our view Option 2 would be a backwards step in terms of addressing three 'wicked' problems facing Aotearoa NZ, namely achieving landscape scale water quality improvements, reducing net climate change emissions and improving biodiversity outcomes. We note Option 2 as currently proposed would not provide any net increase in incentives for indigenous permanent forests.
- 3.7. Council does not support a moratorium (Option 3B) as this just creates uncertainty and may result in poor investment decisions.

#### **4. Our preferred option**

- 4.1. We support the assessment criteria set out on Page 16. In our view the option that best delivers on these criteria is one that keeps the most flexibility in the ETS and maximises co-benefits / best delivers on other government objectives (such as water quality and biodiversity gains and enabling a just transition to a low carbon economy)

but also controls the issue of concern, that being a proliferation of 'unmanaged / unproductive' exotic carbon forests. We therefore support Option 3A with a range of 'exceptions' being available for entry of permanent exotic forests into the ETS with the exceptions being determined by regulations. Our suggested approach would be to allow entry of permanent exotic forests into the ETS where it is for one or more of the following:

- i. It is for planting for erosion control on erosion-prone land or to otherwise mitigate the effects of sediment / improve water quality. Erosion prone land could be defined using Land Use Capability classes but should be broader than the NES Plantation Forestry 'red-zone' (which does not accurately identify erosion risk in Northland). It should also allow for planting to address localised gully, landslip or landslide erosion as these deliver a high proportion of sediment.
- ii. It is designed to transition from exotic to indigenous forests over time
- iii. It is on remote and marginal land (subject to an appropriate definition)
- iv. It is established for sustainable production (such as timber, fibre or biofuels).

A 'forest management plan' should be a requirement of entry into the ETS permanent exotic forest category – this would set out the measures to reduce risks of pests, weeds, wilding spread and wildfire and (where relevant) set out the production activities proposed. We recognise this would add complexity and potentially compliance costs but consider it would address a number of the risks the government has identified.

- 4.2. We do not support a species-based approach to the above, preferring that options remain open for landowners to make decisions on the basis of 'the right tree in the right place for the right purpose', with the onus on the landowner to undertake interventions that ensure the forest is productive and managed for specific environmental outcomes.
- 4.3. While a new continuous cover / permanent exotic forest may be able to enter the ETS as a 'production forest', the mandatory use of averaging accounting (even for 'extended rotations') effectively penalises this type of forestry, meaning carbon returns under the ETS are lower and clear-fell harvest is incentivised rather than retaining a permanent forest canopy. We recommend the stock change accounting approach be retained for both permanent exotic and native forests as the averaging accounting method does not accurately reflect the management regime required, or carbon stocks held in permanent forests (i.e. there is no clear-fell harvest cycle to 'average out').
- 4.4. While care will be required to ensure loopholes are managed, we consider the above manages the risks the government is concerned about but retains flexibility in the ETS for a range of appropriate forest types that maximise co-benefits for the environment, the economy and people, and will assist in meeting net emissions targets. It is also likely to go some way towards 'rationing NZ's sequestration

capacity' and placing more emphasis on emissions reduction by limiting the total amount of permanent exotic forestry.

## **5. Averaging accounting**

- 5.1. A "longer rotation" averaging forest category provides greater flexibility for landowners to extend rotation length for better environmental outcomes. The longer a rotation is, the less impact harvesting will have on sediment runoff and soil capital. However, longer rotations should not be a substitute for a permanent/continuous cover forest, because rotational forestry is fundamentally different than continuous cover forestry. The ETS should distinguish this difference for all forest species, whether exotic or native.
- 5.2. We also recommend that forests under 100 hectares (of any species) have the option to measure their carbon using stock change accounting rather than be limited to using carbon lookup tables. This on the basis that the look up tables may not accurately reflect their carbon stocks - we suspect that carbon sequestration rates in Northland forests may well be under-estimated by the look up tables. Allowing this option may also have the effect of increasing incentives for native forests especially in Northern parts of NZ (as it is likely the look up tables also underestimate native carbon sequestration in these areas).

## **6. Better incentives for indigenous permanent forests**

- 6.1. Council supports more effective incentives for indigenous forestry in the ETS. Analysis we have undertaken indicates current financial incentives strongly favour afforestation using exotic species rather than natives. Considering the cost side only (land preparation, tree cost, planting, releasing, fencing, and the opportunity cost of lost livestock production), permanent afforestation in natives is around 70% more expensive than Pinus Radiata. This is primarily due to the cost of trees. When carbon credits are claimed under the ETS the incentive becomes even stronger. Using a carbon price of just \$35 per tonne and the per hectare carbon stock values in the look-up tables, a permanent Pinus Radiata forest yields a positive net present value over a thirty-year period. While claiming carbon credits will offset some of the cost of planting natives, the net cost for natives is still higher than the cost of planting Pinus Radiata without claiming credits. Only when the carbon price exceeds \$145 per tonne, will planting natives begin to yield a positive net return.
- 6.2. We recognise the integrity / credibility of the ETS as a carbon accounting and pricing tool must be maintained but consider the accuracy of the sequestration rates in look-up tables for both native and exotic species could be improved. We therefore strongly support a review of the tables. We would like to see sequestration rates for specific species included and the different sequestration rates across NZ better recognised (rather than a national average being used for native). For example, Totara, Kahikatea, Puriri and Kauri have potential in Northland but are likely to be currently 'under-rewarded' by ETS look up tables. The longer sequestration period of native forests could also be better recognised – as could the fact they tend to be truly

permanent / self-sustaining compared with 'unmanaged' exotic forests. This should be recognised in ETS and other government policy settings given the broad cultural and environmental co-benefits.

- 6.3. As noted above, we support forests under 100 hectares be able to measure their carbon stocks rather than be limited to using the lookup tables that may not accurately reflect their carbon stocks – especially for native in Northern NZ.
- 6.4. One option that could be investigated is a form of 'advancing' carbon credits for permanent native forests – e.g. averaging NZUs over the life of the forest. Currently landowners establishing permanent native forests face most of the (quite significant) costs up front but are unlikely to receive significant ETS rewards for some time given the slower growth / sequestration rates of native species. We understand this to be a barrier to entry of native into the ETS. We recommend analysis into the potential for ETS rewards / NZUs to be paid ahead of sequestration for permanent native forests so that they are incentivised with initial higher returns so upfront costs are less daunting.
- 6.5. We consider there is potential for sequestration by wetlands to be recognised in the ETS. We recognise this to be in effect soil sequestration, but do not see it as completely beyond the scope of the ETS. Rewarding sequestration within wetlands in the ETS would also align well with other government objectives including enhancing biodiversity, improving water quality and no net loss of wetlands.<sup>2</sup> We recognise quantifying sequestration in wetlands could be problematic as we consider it is worth investigation.
- 6.6. We understand He Waka Eke Noa Partnership has a workstream focussed on designing a simple and cost-effective mechanism that incentivises on-farm carbon sequestration from sources that do not currently qualify under the ETS (such as many riparian plantings). This would ideally enable riparian plantings to act as offsets against on-farm emissions regardless of whether the planting qualifies for the ETS or not. This approach is supported – we note as a 'backstop' position, agricultural emissions will enter the NZ ETS if an effective, workable alternative is not put forward by the Partnership. We'd suggest that if this 'backstop' position is needed either that a) the ETS revenue from agricultural emissions be invested back into the agricultural sector to support further emissions reductions (including paying for sequestration not eligible for the NZ ETS such as riparian plantings) or b) the ETS be amended to better recognise such on-farm offsetting measures (farm plans could be used to account for on-farm emissions and offsets in this instance).
- 6.7. The added sequestration as a result control of browsing pests in native forests is another area we consider could be investigated. Research<sup>3</sup> by Forest and Bird

---

<sup>2</sup> National Policy Statement for Freshwater 2020 – Policy 6 and Clause 3.22

<sup>3</sup> <https://www.forestandbird.org.nz/sites/default/files/2021-06/Protecting%20our%20natural%20ecosystems%27%20carbon%20sinks%20-%20Forest%20%26%20Bird%20report.pdf>

estimates that the equivalent of nearly 15% of New Zealand's 2018 net GHG emissions per year (8.4 million tonnes of CO<sub>2</sub>) could be locked into native ecosystem carbon sinks if we controlled feral browsing animals to the lowest possible levels. Again, quantifying sequestration benefits is likely problematic but should be investigated given the alignment with government biodiversity objectives.

### **Conclusion**

We thank the government for the opportunity to comment on the proposal. In closing, landowners require an equitable ETS scheme that incentivises planting of sustainable, permanent, continuous cover production forests, forests that produce returns from both carbon and timber. In our view many areas in Aotearoa NZ currently used for agriculture would be more suited to permanent / continuous cover production forest than pasture or clear-fell rotation based production forestry given terrain and potential water quality impacts. The proposal to exclude all exotics from permanent forest category in the ETS is too blunt, especially as the settings proposed leave no real alternative but clear-fell forestry or permanent native forests – neither of which will be viable / suitable in all cases. We prefer retaining flexibility in the ETS settings so that there are viable land use solutions for a range of circumstances that maximise co-benefits but also assist in meeting net GHG emissions targets.

Signed on behalf of Northland Regional Council

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'M. Nicolson', with a long horizontal stroke extending to the right.

Malcolm Nicolson (Chief Executive Officer)

Dated: 14 April 2022

**TITLE: Adoption of Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy**

**From:** Tom Fitzgerald, Climate Change Manager

**Authorised by** Victoria Harwood, Pou Tiaki Hapori - GM Community Resilience, on 13 April  
**Group Manager/s:** 2022

---

**Executive summary/Whakarāpopototanga**

Adapting to the effects of climate change presents significant challenges and opportunities for Te Tai Tokerau Northland – these effects are already apparent and predicted to intensify. Local government has a significant role in this given its various functions. Adaptation approaches and actions by Northland's councils need to be coordinated in order to be successful and efficient. For these reasons Northland councils have developed the Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy (the Strategy).

The purpose of the Strategy is to set the direction for a robust, collaborative approach to developing adaptation responses to the impacts of climate change in Te Tai Tokerau, by building a foundation for action while acknowledging the changing legislative environment and remaining agile. Key objectives of the Strategy are:

- improving understanding of the risks and vulnerabilities posed by climate change to our region
- clarifying adaptation needs and responsibilities
- identifying opportunities to improve local government adaptation responses
- recommending priority actions for local government
- outlining a review process by which the strategy will respond to feedback and changing circumstances

The Strategy is intended to be a 'living document' that evolves as the climate, environment, legislative and policy context and communities change. A review process is outlined in Part 4 of the Strategy.

On 7 March 2022, the Joint Committee recommended additional minor amendments be made and endorsed the final Strategy to member Councils for adoption.

This report seeks adoption of the Strategy by Northland Regional Council.

---

**Recommendation(s)**

1. That the report 'Adoption of Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy' by Tom Fitzgerald, Climate Change Manager and dated 13 April 2022, be received.
2. That Council adopt the attached Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy, and Appendices.

---

**Options**

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
1	Adoption of the Strategy	Confirms a collaborative regional approach to climate adaptation that recognises the inter-related governance of	None.

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
		<p>undertaking climate adaptation actions.</p> <p>The Strategy provides a broad direction for climate change adaptation but allows individual councils flexibility to tailor approaches and plans to suit the specific needs of their communities.</p> <p>Provides significant opportunities for capacity, capability building and shared learning.</p> <p>Allows for a consistent regional platform to advocate and lobby central government in various legislative reforms processes and new policies (e.g. National Adaptation Platform).</p> <p>Allows for efficiencies in terms of funding, policy development and other actions.</p>	
2	Non-adoption of the Strategy	None.	<p>Inconsistent with our own climate change strategy (Ngā Taumata o Te Moana).</p> <p>Reduced mandate for work that supports climate adaptation across the region, including shared actions with District Council partners.</p> <p>Councils revert to operating in silos, resulting in reduced efficiency and even counter-productive work.</p>



No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
			Climate change response will be severely impacted across the region leading to potentially significant economic, environmental and socio-cultural impacts.

The staff's recommended option is Option 1.

## Considerations

### 1. Environmental Impact

With climate change accelerating, adaptation to its impacts is becoming increasingly critical. A coordinated approach across councils in Northland will be foundational in responding to those impacts. The Strategy provides this foundation by identifying core principles, goals, consistent approaches and coordinates future and ongoing adaptation actions.

The effects of climate change on our environment are far reaching and significant. The adoption of the Strategy provides an opportunity to navigate a path through those impacts while encouraging consistent, systematic action to reduce impacts.

The decision to adopt the Strategy is expected to have a positive impact on the ability of councils to anticipate and proactively respond to climate change impacts that are already happening or expected to happen.

### 2. Community views

There are a broad range of community views and understanding of climate change and measures to adapt to climate change impacts. The Strategy provides a foundation for enabling communities to understand the impacts of climate change on their lives and supports participation in adaptation planning processes occurring across the region.

The decision to adopt the Strategy for adoption by councils is therefore of benefit to all Northland communities.

### 3. Māori impact statement

Climate change poses significant risks to Māori, with potentially disproportionate impacts as noted in the National Climate Change Risk Assessment.

The effects of climate change will have 'significant impacts in relation to land or a body of water'. As stated in section 77 of the *Local Government Act 2002*, council decisions must therefore "take into account the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral land, water, sites, wāhi tapu, valued flora and fauna, and other taonga".

The Strategy (Attachment 1, page 24) discusses the impacts of climate change on Māori. Priority actions are also listed which relate directly to Māori (see Attachment 2, actions 1,2,9, and 10).

The adoption of the Strategy and its ongoing implementation is anticipated to have positive effects for Māori.

#### **4. Financial implications**

The implementation of priority actions under the Strategy will be undertaken using existing operational budgets as set out in the 2021-2031 Long Term Plan. Where further funds or resourcing is identified to be required, additional assessments will be made, business cases developed, and specific allocations sought through upcoming Annual Plan and Long Term Plan processes. Therefore, adopting the Strategy today does not commit Council to specific expenditure amounts.

#### **5. Implementation issues**

Appendix One of the Strategy There are 46 Priority Actions recommended in the Strategy. Northland Regional Council is solely responsible for 9 priority actions (Actions 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 32 and 33). Apart from Actions 16 (Biosecurity risk assessment), 17 (Ecosystem and biodiversity risk assessment) and 22 (Coastal aquifers), all NRC led actions are able to be undertaken out of existing operational funding.

Another 32 Priority Actions are the responsibility of either individual councils or all councils.

Action 13 (roading risk assessment) is the responsibility of the Northern Transport Alliance and Action 14 (lifelines risk assessment) is the responsibility of the Northland Lifelines Group.

The Joint Committee has carriage of two specific actions – being Priority Action 3 (clarify funding responsibilities) and 4 (advocacy).

A key initiative for staff in the immediate term is to undertake a stocktake of current or planned NRC work that aligns or supports the 46 Priority Actions. It is staff's intention to subsequently develop a robust and efficient monitoring and evaluation (M&E) system that enables the tracking of progress on climate adaptation actions, supports the ongoing legitimacy of the Strategy and provides improved transparency and accountability. This sort of reporting is also critical in ensuring the Strategy is dynamic and can respond to the changing nature of climate risks.

#### **6. Significance and engagement**

In line with Council's Significance and Engagement Policy, the level of significance for the Strategy is low, as the Strategy is consistent with Council's plans and policies. That said, effective community engagement is essential to the implementation of the strategy. Best practice principles of public participation will be applied as appropriate regarding specific priority actions.

Anticipating that the Strategy will be adopted by the four individual councils, a Regional Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau Communications collaborative group has been established that is overseen by the Joint Committee. This Group includes staff from the communications and engagement teams of each of the four councils. The collaborative group is developing a communications plan to assist the public release of the Strategy.

#### **7. Policy, risk management and legislative compliance**

There are risks associated with climate change adaptation – these include an uncertain and changing legislative / policy environment, uncertainty over the timing and severity future of climate change impacts and the costs, cost-effectiveness and impacts of responses. The Strategy acknowledges these and provides for review under a range of circumstances. Many of the Priority Actions in the Strategy are also flexible, agile and can respond to these risks as implementation progresses – they are also based on / informed by best practice and government guidance where available. It is very likely that the risks of ‘inaction’ or uncoordinated response are far greater than any risks posed by adoption and implementation of the Strategy.

---

## Background/Tuhinga

The impacts of climate change are already affecting people and natural systems in Tai Tokerau | Northland. Climate impacts are projected to continue on an upward trend, with the expected severity of impacts depending on the success of global emissions reductions efforts. Climate change adaptation, that is responses to the current and projected impacts of climate change, is a key responsibility for local government, particularly as it relates to natural hazards, the provision of infrastructure and statutory planning. This is the core focus of the Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy (the Strategy).

During a series of workshops with relevant governance bodies in each Council in September/October 2021, specific feedback was sought on the contents and approach of the draft Strategy.

On 29 November 2021, the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee (the Joint Committee) endorsed the draft Strategy for adoption by the individual local councils subject to two amendments:

1. implementation of Three Waters Reform to trigger a ‘major’ rather than a ‘minor’ review of the Strategy
2. text regarding the Aupōuri aquifer to be amended to refer to the uncertainty of the effects of climate change.

On 7 March 2022, the Joint Committee again endorsed the draft Strategy, requesting additional minor amendments be made relating to the position of the foreword, signatory page and process of selection of Tangata whenua representatives. The Chair and Deputy Chair of the Joint Committee have approved these changes and the Strategy is now recommended for adoption by all member councils.

## Council’s Role regarding Climate Change Adaptation

A range of current legislation and government advice supports council actions to adapt to climate change:

- The **Local Government Act 2002**. As climate change will have many impacts on the “four well-beings” at the community level, council must play a key role of “prudent stewardship” in assisting communities adapt to climate change both in the present and for future generations
- The **Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA)**. Under the RMA, council is required to have “particular regard to the effects of climate change”
- The first **National Climate Change Risk Assessment**. The government released this Assessment in August 2020. This identified 43 risks that could have major or extreme consequences for New Zealand and noted that Māori will be disproportionately impacted by these risks
- The **New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010** requires managing of coastal hazard risks “taking account of climate change”. The associated advice, **Coastal Hazards and Climate Change: Guidance for Local Government 2017**, outlines an adaptive planning approach for council and communities to plan for the impacts of climate change on coastal communities. A

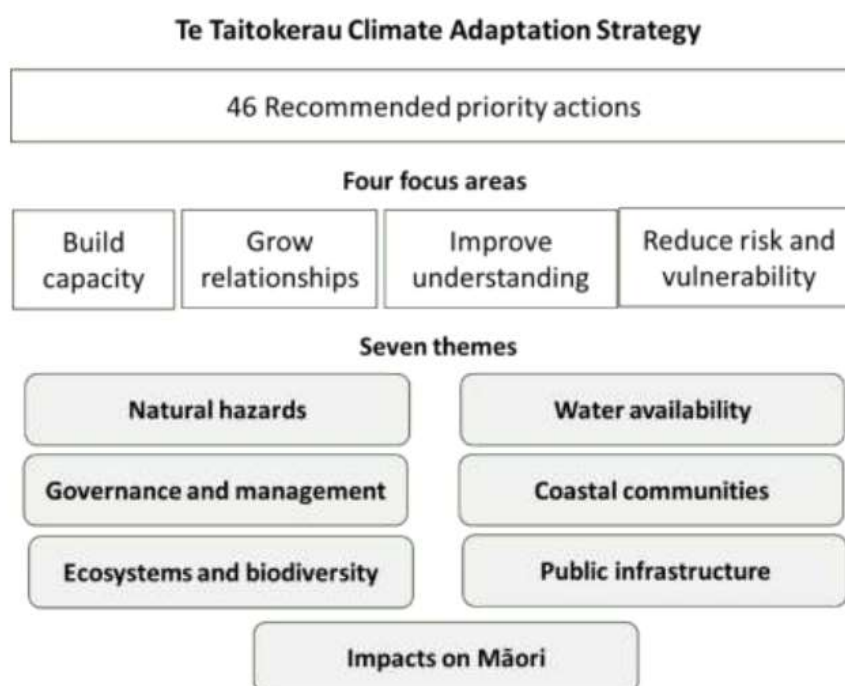
priority action in the regional Strategy is to work with at risk coastal communities using this adaptive planning approach.

### Relevant Planned Future Legislation

- A **Climate Change Adaptation Act** will be passed into law as part of RMA reforms. This Act will address the complex issues associated with managed retreat and the funding and financing of adaptation and is scheduled for 2023.
- A **National Adaptation Plan** will be published in 2022. It will address the risks identified in the National Climate Change Risk Assessment and will set out the government's objectives, strategies, policies, proposals, and timeframes regarding climate change adaptation.

### Overview of the Strategy

The Strategy focuses on climate change adaptation (responding to and managing the effects of climate change) rather than on mitigation (reducing carbon emissions). The content of the Strategy is summarised in the following diagram:



### Objectives

Key objectives of the Strategy include:

- improving understanding of the risks of climate change to the Northland region by Northland councils
- clarifying adaptation needs and responsibilities in the region
- identifying opportunities to improve local government adaptation responses
- listing priority climate change adaptation actions for local government in Northland.

## Principles

The Strategy lists ten climate adaptation principles which broadly align with the core values, commitments and actions under Ngā Taumata o te Moana.

1	<b>Treaty of Waitangi and Te Tiriti o Waitangi</b>	Working collaboratively with tangata whenua
2	<b>Whanaungatanga</b>	Working together to build relationships and a sense of connection across the region
3	<b>Co-production of knowledge</b>	Alongside western science, enable mātauranga to help understand climate changes and inform decisions
4	<b>Equitable</b>	Empower communities to ensure no-one is left behind
5	<b>Considered</b>	Research-led, evidence-based, values-driven policy and decision-making
6	<b>Ka mua, ka muri</b>	Balance present-day needs and responsibilities with the rights of future generations
7	<b>Transformative</b>	Use innovation to take advantage of opportunities
8	<b>Transition</b>	Align adaptation with emissions reductions and transition actions
9	<b>Holistic</b>	Enhance the four wellbeing's
10	<b>Integrated</b>	Embed a climate change lens across all council activities


## The Strategy is Designed as a Living Document

To stay up-to-date, relevant and adapt, the Strategy includes processes to respond to changing circumstances, such as emerging government legislation and learnings from adaptation projects.

---

## Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Attachment 1: Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy Appendix One - Priority Actions [↓](#) 

Attachment 2: Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy Appendix Two - Climate risk overview [↓](#) 

Attachment 3: Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy Final Version 2022 04 05 [↓](#) 

# Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy Appendix One

## Part 5 – Priority actions by Tai Tokerau Councils

The Priority Actions list below sets out Northland council actions. It is important to note that there will be other parties involved, who may sometimes lead the delivery of actions. This could include our hapū and iwi partners, government agencies and other sectoral groups such as farmers, insurance providers, civil defence teams, social support providers and landowners.

A number of resourcing commitments have already been made by Northland councils, which address the majority of actions. This is indicated by the term ‘Existing funding’ in the Funding status column below. Funding decisions will be made by individual Councils where actions need more resourcing. Timeframes are an indication of urgency and relative priorities, reflecting interdependencies between activities. Priority statuses are subject to review pending external community engagement through the Long Term Plan and Annual Plan processes.

‘Indicative resources required’ column shows estimated total cost per annum (p.a.) and staff resourcing.  
Estimated total costs p.a.: \$=<\$10k, \$\$=\$10-100k, \$\$\$=\$100-500k, \$\$\$\$=\$500k-1M, \$\$\$\$\$=\$1M+  
Staff resourcing: P =low, PP=moderate, PPP=large staff effort required

Key area	Topic		Title	Aim	Description	Council involvement	Start	End	Indicative resources required	Funding status
Grow Relationships	Tangata whenua	1	Tangata whenua involvement	Ensure tangata whenua are appropriately involved in adaptation decision-making.	Ensure inclusive processes for tangata whenua representation at all stages of adaptation decision-making, including providing appropriate resourcing, supporting training and developing targeted programmes.	All Councils collaboration	In progress	Ongoing	\$\$ P	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
		2	Embed Māori values in council processes	Ensure Māori values and worldviews are included in council processes and decision-making relating to climate change.	Co-design with iwi and hapū representatives of a decision-making framework based on Te Ao Māori concepts and values. The framework will include implementation tools and will recognise that there are regional and local differences within Te Tai Tokerau that inform how local authorities operate.	Led by Whangarei District Council	In progress	Mar 2022	\$\$ P	Existing funding
	Governance	3	Clarify funding responsibilities	Clarify adaptation management and funding responsibilities between councils.	Develop shared understanding on clear responsibilities for the funding and management of adaptation responses, especially between regional and district councils (e.g. for coastal structures).	Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee	Feb 2022	End 2022	P	Existing funding
		4	Advocacy	Promote Northland's voice in central government policy and legislation development.	Targeted advocacy with central government, regarding the development of new funding mechanisms and legislation.	Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee	Feb 2022	Ongoing	P	Existing funding
	Nation-wide engagement	5	Central government engagement	Ensure Northland has input into central government adaptation policy and legislation development.	Prioritise engagement and advocacy with MfE on development of new legislation including RMA reform, the National Adaptation Plan and the Climate Change Adaptation Act.	Individual Councils	In progress	Ongoing	P	Existing funding
		6	National partnerships	Develop partnerships and knowledge sharing with regional and sector groups.	Contribute to collaborative projects and partnerships, and leverage existing knowledge from other regions and internationally.	Individual Councils	In progress	Ongoing	P	Existing funding
	Communications	7	Community awareness	Ensure widespread community awareness and interaction on adaptation issues.	Develop a communications and engagement plan to address the needs of the Te Tai Tokerau Adaptation Strategy, including media releases, publication of key documents, and internet and social media presence.	All Councils collaboration	In progress	End 2021	P	Existing funding
		8	Public access to adaptation documentation	Improve public access to adaptation planning processes, information and documents.	Establish a facility to enable community access to adaptation information, such as reports, research, interactive maps, strategy documents, programme details, community meeting minutes, etc.	All Councils collaboration	Jan 2022	End 2022	\$ P	Existing funding
Improve knowledge and understanding	Impacts on Māori	9	Māori adaptation impact assessment	Improve bi-cultural understanding of climate risks and consequences.	Work with tangata whenua to undertake iwi- and hapū-focused risk assessments, including communicating risks from Te Ao Māori perspectives, identifying risks associated with climate hazards, impacts of adaptation responses and limits to Māori adaptive capacity. This may include direct impacts on cultural values such as waahi tapu; as well as compounding risks, such as interactions between councils and government legislation resulting in unintended consequences, or barriers for Māori adaptation responses.	All Councils collaboration	May 2022 depending on tangata whenua capacity	TBA	\$\$ PP	Additional funding/resourcing may be required

Key area	Topic		Title	Aim	Description	Council involvement	Start	End	Indicative resources required	Funding status
	Public infrastructure	10	Iwi/hapū-focused adaptation	Enable iwi/hapū-led adaptation planning at appropriate scales.	Work with tangata whenua to develop a programme to facilitate hapū or iwi -led holistic climate change adaptation plans to integrate multiple climate risks as well as other community objectives. Draw on approaches to adaptation engagement with Māori that have been successful in the past. This may include provisions to support iwi/hapū with risk assessments and technical analysis as well as enabling data sovereignty.	All Councils collaboration	Dec 2021	Ongoing	\$ P	Existing funding (NRC – but additional funding may be required from other councils)
		11	Consistent infrastructure risk assessment criteria	Improve consistency and quality of climate risk assessments for council assets and infrastructure.	Develop consistent standards and processes for undertaking risk assessments for council assets and infrastructure (e.g. agreed criteria, hazard scenarios and damage functions).	All Councils collaboration	Jun 2022	Dec 2022	\$ P	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
		12	Infrastructure risk assessments	Improve knowledge of climate risk for council assets and infrastructure.	Undertake infrastructure climate risk assessments for each council and include documented climate risks in infrastructure and financial strategies.	Individual Councils	Aug 2021	TBA	\$ PP	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
Improve knowledge and understanding	Public infrastructure	13	Roading risk assessments	Improve understanding of long-term climate risks to roading infrastructure.	Develop a regional roading network resilience plan, assessing critical roads at risk from landslides and slips, with the potential for future assessment of flooding and coastal hazards under climate change scenarios.	Northland Transport Alliance	In progress	Jun 2022	\$ P	Existing funding
		14	Lifelines risk assessments	Improve understanding of long-term climate risks to lifelines infrastructure.	Develop a lifelines utilities infrastructure risk assessment, working with Northland Lifelines Group members' spatial data.	Northland Lifelines Group	Aug 2021	Mar 2022 (?)	\$ P	Existing funding
		15	Infrastructure planning	Ensure consideration of climate change impacts in infrastructure planning.	Develop and implement processes/policy to ensure consideration of climate change impacts in infrastructure planning, activity management plans and infrastructure strategies, including a monitoring and evaluation plan. This should include consistent application of climate risk assessments and adaptive management approaches. (N.B. This should also include emissions reductions considerations – see priority actions 11 and 12.)	Individual Councils	TBA	Medium-term	\$ PP	Existing funding
	Natural environment	16	Biosecurity risk assessment	Improve understanding of climate change-driven biosecurity threats and develop monitoring and response programmes.	Undertake preliminary high-level investigations into future biosecurity threats (both sleeper and offshore), aligned with national research programmes and information from agencies (e.g. MPI and MoH). The scope may include: human pathogens, primary industry pests and pathogens (agriculture, horticulture and aquaculture) and environmental pests (freshwater, terrestrial and marine). Develop prioritised monitoring and response programmes for relevant target species.	Northland Regional Council	TBA	Medium-term	\$ P	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
		17	Ecosystem and biodiversity risk assessment	Improve understanding of climate change impacts on biodiversity and ecosystem function and develop monitoring and response programmes.	Undertake preliminary high-level investigations identifying major at-risk species and ecosystems, followed by targeted research into key ecosystems. Develop monitoring and response plans for key species, habitats and ecosystems, including wetland/peat, terrestrial, marine, freshwater, lakes, coastal dunes, and foreshore and estuarine ecosystems.	Northland Regional Council	TBA	Medium-term	\$ P	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
	Natural hazards	18	River flood risk assessment	Improve understanding of river flood risk under climate change and plan future river flood management programmes.	Undertake risk assessments for communities exposed to flooding using region-wide flood model projections, and use this information to prioritise future flood management programmes. Ensure all river flood models include consistent climate change factors, including rainfall intensity and sea level rise.	Northland Regional Council	In progress	Ongoing	\$ PP	Existing funding
		19	Coastal hazards	Improve understanding of coastal hazards under climate change scenarios.	Continue to improve coastal hazards assessments, including methods for understanding impacts, considering the combination of river and coastal flooding, sea level rise and ex-tropical cyclones, and coastal erosion.	Northland Regional Council	In progress	Ongoing	\$ P	Existing funding
		20	Land hazard data	Improve understanding of land hazards under climate change scenarios.	Collate existing information on geotechnical instability and slips in a common spatial database; and look for research partnerships (e.g. GNS, Waka Kotahi, NTA) to further develop information and data.	Northland Regional Council	Jun 2022	Dec 2022	\$ P	Existing funding
		21	Wildfire hazard data	Improve understanding of wildfire risk under climate change scenarios.	Collate information on projected fire hazards and at-risk landscape information in a common spatial database; and look for research partnerships (e.g. FENZ, Scion) to further develop information and data.	Northland Regional Council	Jun 2022	Dec 2022	\$ P	Existing funding
	Water resilience	22	Coastal aquifers	Improve understanding of the impacts of sea level rise on coastal aquifers.	Further develop groundwater models to predict aquifer responses to sea level rise and over extraction from coastal aquifers.	Northland Regional Council	TBA	Medium-term	\$ P	Additional funding/resourcing may be required

Key area	Topic		Title	Aim	Description	Council involvement	Start	End	Indicative resources required	Funding status
	Water resilience	23	Community drought adaptation opportunities	1) Improve understanding of the impacts of drought on rural and community water supplies, and 2) identify opportunities to support community adaptation to drought.	Collate data on drought vulnerability, and develop community vulnerability assessments. (N.B. The responsibility for this item may be impacted by the Three Waters Reform process.) Investigate priority hapū and community needs and existing adaptation/water resilience programmes/actions; and clarify opportunities for the Councils to add value by facilitating adaptation planning.	All Councils collaboration	Feb 2022	Dec 2023	\$\$ PP	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
	Research	24	Research participation	Improve local adaptation knowledge through local programmes and national and international research.	Support and participate in adaptation research programmes, and collate relevant information to enhance local understanding and adaptation response options.	Individual Councils	In progress	Ongoing	PP	Existing funding
Reduce risk and vulnerability	Resource management planning and policy	25	District plans	Avoid increasing risk from new development and redevelopment in areas exposed to projected hazards.	As required by legislation, ensure new river and coastal hazard maps are included in district plans, with adequate rules and policies to avoid increasing risk associated with new development and redevelopment. (N.B. RMA reforms may impact this item and review may be required.)	Individual Councils	In progress	End 2022	PP	Existing funding
		26	Spatial planning	Embed climate change risks and adaptation planning into strategic spatial plans.	Undertake region-wide spatial planning to highlight risks and opportunities for strategic land-use planning that enables adaptation responses and enhances wellbeing. (N.B. RMA reforms will impact this item and review may be required.)	All Councils collaboration	2024	ongoing	\$ PP	Existing funding
		27	Region-wide coastal management policy	Ensure integrated coastal management and adaptation objectives are met in region-wide policy.	Investigate and apply a coordinated and integrated approach to coastline management in regional policy. For example, include a requirement to develop adaptation plans where significant hard coastal protection works, major development or infrastructure is being considered, (N.B. RMA reforms will impact this item and review may be required.)	All Councils collaboration	2024??	Long-term	P	Existing funding
		28	Embed community adaptation plans	Ensure community adaptation plans are embedded in regulatory instruments.	Investigate and develop methodologies to embed adaptive pathways plans into planning regimes, including using environmental cues to trigger changes to planning rules (N.B. RMA reforms will impact this item and review may be required.)	All Councils collaboration	2024	ongoing	P	Existing funding
	Coastal communities	29	Coastal adaptation programme	Develop a programme of coastal adaptation planning projects aligned with community needs.	Develop a region-wide coastal adaptation programme, identifying key locations, timeframes and engagement methodologies, using recommended considerations in the <i>Coastal Community Profiles</i> and <i>Adaptation Engagement Framework</i> reports.	All Councils collaboration	In progress	Mid 2022	P	Existing funding
		30	Coastal adaptation planning projects	Enable flexible, planned adaptation responses to coastal hazards by co-developing adaptation plans with communities.	Deliver projects in the <i>coastal adaptation programme</i> . Undertake community pre-engagement to confirm site selection and appropriate engagement methodology. Work alongside communities to understand, plan and implement adaptation responses by co-developing community adaptation plans in at-risk areas, following recommendations in the <i>Coastal Community Profiles</i> and <i>Adaptation Engagement Framework</i> reports.	Individual Councils	2022	ongoing	\$\$\$ PPP	Existing funding
		31	Civil defence	Integrate civil defence and community adaptation planning objectives.	Ensure alignment of civil defence response plans, climate risk assessments and adaptation planning.	All Councils collaboration	In progress	Mid 2022	P	Existing funding
		32	Nature-based solutions	Promote nature-based solutions as interim hazard-reduction options for coastal impacts.	Continue to support community dune restoration and enhancement projects such as the Coast Care programme in line with regional adaptation planning, and as alternative interim measures in place of hard protection structures.	Northland Regional Council	In progress	Ongoing	\$\$ PP	Existing funding
	River flooding	33	River flood management	Reduce flooding risk to communities through river management.	Continue to deliver prioritised river flood management projects, and plan and secure funding for future flood management implementation across the region.	Northland Regional Council	In progress	Ongoing	\$\$\$\$ PPP	Existing funding
		34	Coordinated flood risk management	Improve coordination between the District and Regional Councils in pluvial and fluvial flood management.	Work together to promote projects with multiple partners and co-benefits (e.g. the Blue-Green Network involving WDC and NRC).	Individual Councils	In progress	Ongoing	PP	Existing funding
	Water resilience	35	Water tank assistance	Improve community water resilience through water tank programmes.	Provide assistance to remote communities to install water collection, storage and treatment with a focus on community resilience, e.g. NRC's water tank programme.	All Councils collaboration	Early 2022	Ongoing	\$\$\$\$ PP	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
		36	Water resilience funding coordination	Improve coordination between agencies/organisations to improve water resilience outcomes.	Improve coordination between agencies to build collaborative, aligned water resilience responses including: tangata whenua, CDEM, District Councils (Four Waters Advisory Group), and agencies (FENZ, MPI, TPK, DIA).	All Councils collaboration	In progress	Ongoing	P	Existing funding
Build capacity	Governance	37	Communication to elected members	Enable governance focus and oversight of climate change issues.	Ensure clear reporting of organisational and regional climate change risks and progress on adaptation/response actions to decision-makers, including mandatory disclosure of climate change implications to elected members in reports.	Individual Councils	In progress	Ongoing	P	Existing funding



Key area	Topic		Title	Aim	Description	Council involvement	Start	End	Indicative resources required	Funding status
	Internal policy and processes	38	Joint climate change policy framework	Ensure consistent consideration of climate change issues across individual Councils.	Develop consistency between climate change policies that embed consideration of climate change impacts and adaptation responses in all council decision-making (which may also include council emissions reduction). This framework should define approaches and principles on data/information, definitions, reporting, standards and criteria.	All Councils collaboration	2022??	2023	PP	Existing funding
	Internal policy and processes	39	Policy review and improvement plan	Embed climate change objectives across individual council policies, strategies, plans and processes.	1) Identify improvement opportunities by undertaking a maturity assessment for each council of all relevant policies, strategies, plans and processes (which may also include council emissions reduction), and 2) develop and deliver a climate change policy improvement plan that outlines a programme of policy updates to embed climate change objectives within a defined timeframe.	Individual Councils	2023	TBC	PP	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
	Internal policy and processes	40	Climate risk disclosure	Ensure transparent monitoring and reporting of climate risks and responses.	Clear disclosure and reporting of climate risks, policy maturity, and progress on response actions in alignment with the recommendations of the Taskforce on Climate-related Financial Disclosure. This may include actions such as ensuring climate change is included in council risk frameworks, financial reports and infrastructure strategies; regularly reporting to auditors, and establishing KPIs for senior managers and CEOs .	Individual Councils	2022	2023	P	Existing funding
		41	Climate change in business cases	Embed climate change considerations in business cases and procurement policies.	Ensure disclosure of climate change risks in business cases, proposals and procurement documents, including long-term risks such as sea level rise.	Individual Councils	2022	2023	P	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
		42	Alignment of adaptation plans	Ensure community adaptation planning processes are aligned with council funding processes.	Develop processes to ensure alignment of community adaptation plans with council plans and policies, including long-term plans, infrastructure strategies and financial plans.	Individual Councils	2022	Ongoing	PP	Existing funding
	Organisational capacity	43	Climate change teams	Establish appropriate portfolio, programme and project governance and management structures to build organisational capacities.	Establish appropriate teams to deliver organisation-wide climate change implementation at each council, reporting to an appropriate level of management and given sufficient support.	Individual Councils	In progress	Ongoing	\$ P	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
		44	Staff resources	Ensure sufficient staff resourcing and capacity.	Ensure sufficient staff resources are allocated to enable an ongoing organisation-wide climate change response, including climate change focused roles and professional development and training.	Individual Councils	In progress	Ongoing	\$\$\$	Additional funding/resourcing may be required
		45	Adaptation funding	Identify and pursue adaptation funding avenues.	Investigate and prioritise potential funding opportunities to enable the implementation of adaptation responses.	All Councils collaboration	In progress	Ongoing	PP	Existing funding
		46	Inter-council collaboration	Continue to develop collaborative inter-council programmes and shared services.	Continue to support and invest in the regional collaborative adaptation work programme, including establishing a process for sharing of resources between the Councils on specific projects, acknowledging the significant benefits and efficiencies of collaboration. Expand group to include Northland Transport Alliance.	All Councils collaboration	In progress	Ongoing	PP	Existing funding

# Te Taitokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy

## Appendix Two Technical report Climate risk overview

Version: 2.2  
Date: 23 September 2021  
Author: Climate Adaptation Te Taitokerau

# Climate risk overview

## Climate risks

### Climate change effects

Driven by increased concentrations of greenhouse gases in the atmosphere and oceans, climate change **effects** first manifest in the physical environment as hazards and stressors, such as increased mean temperatures, longer periods without rain, higher intensity rainfall events and sea level rise. Effects of climate change already detected in New Zealand include increases in mean temperature, marine heatwaves, sea level rise and more extreme weather events. These have consequences for people, property, taonga, the natural environment and eventually our entire society.

Scientific evidence for climate change and its impacts continues to accumulate and increase in certainty. The release of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change Sixth Assessment Report IPCC AR6 report documents widespread scientific consensus that climate change impacts will continue to increase into the foreseeable future, with the level of change depending on the rate at which greenhouse gases continue to be released into the atmosphere globally. A certain amount of further warming of the planet is almost certain to occur regardless of global emissions reductions efforts, and is likely to bring widespread disruption to Northland's climate and weather.

### Climate change impacts and implications

Climate change effects on physical systems result in consequences for the environment and people. Te Taitokerau is likely to experience physical **impacts** from climate change such as increases in coastal inundation and erosion, more regular river flooding and sedimentation, extended periodic dry periods, increased fire danger weather, and alterations to seasonal weather conditions such as frosts and spring rainfall decline. These will increasingly create **implications** for our region, by disrupting our water, land and ecosystems, our people, culture and economy, and will fundamentally influence the way local government provides services to the community.

We have heard from **Māori** that climate change impacts have the potential to create an existential threat to their cultural taonga and values.<sup>1</sup> We have heard from **hapū** that their ability to successfully adapt is intimately connected with how local government decision making over current and future environmental management takes place and whether Maori are partners in that decision making.<sup>2</sup> Some hapū have expressed that climate change could exacerbate inequities already faced by Maori.<sup>3</sup>

Sea level rise, storm events and flood risk combined with historic patterns of occupation and existing patterns of land ownership mean in some places, traditional uses of the land will come under increased pressure. In other places, whakapapa and whanaungatanga, close social ties and cultural networks will help Māori communities develop adaptation responses and improve resilience.

Our **ecosystems** are vulnerable and currently degraded. Being at the northern tip of an island nation means many of our indigenous taonga species and habitats will naturally move southwards to cooler regions, leaving voids that are likely to be filled by invasive exotic species. Our marine habitats are ranked as being among the best in the world, and the impact of warmer waters may threaten taonga like the Poor Knights reef ecosystems. Coastal ecosystems and habitats for endemic species are likely to experience increased disturbances from heatwaves and flood events as well.

<sup>1</sup> Ngā Hapū o Te Wahapū o Te Hokianga nui a Kupe (Ngāti Wharara & Te Pouka) (2008); Te Aupōuri (DRAFT) (2018); Te Roroa (last reviewed 2011)

<sup>2</sup> Climate Change Adaptation Workshop – Maori and Climate Risk, February 2020.

<sup>3</sup> Patuharakeke Hapu Environmental Management Plan, 2014. Page 37.

Northland **communities** are particularly exposed to climate change. Many of our settlements, town centres and roads sit on coastal floodplains, exposed to sea level rise and increased flooding. Some communities, already isolated, will face further pressure from frequent river and coastal flooding. Droughts, already a significant issue for Northland, are projected to become more frequent and severe. Negative human health impacts due to climate change will also affect our communities. Council infrastructure that supports community well-being and connectivity, such as roading assets and three waters infrastructure which provides drinking water and manages stormwater and wastewater may be at risk.

Our **economy** relies on primary-industry exports that are susceptible to drought, floods, pests and diseases. Water supply systems are vulnerable to prolonged droughts, which are predicted to become more common and more extreme with climate change.

Table 1. Climate change projections for Northland<sup>4</sup>

<b>CLIMATE CHANGE PROJECTIONS AND EFFECTS (based on high emissions scenario RCP8.5)</b>	
<b>Temperature increase</b>	<p><b>Average temperature will rise</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0.7 to 1.1°C by 2040</li> <li>• Up to 3.1°C hotter by 2090</li> </ul> <p><b>More very hot days (greater than 25°C)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 30 more 25°C+ days per year by 2090 (+120%)</li> <li>• Worst case 74 more hot days by 2090 (+260%)</li> </ul>
<b>Changing seasons</b>	<p><b>Seasonal change in temperature</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Greatest temperature increase in northern part of Te Taitokerau in summer and autumn</li> <li>• Worst case scenario warming is uniform across region although winters in southwest experience more warming</li> </ul> <p><b>Fewer frosts per year</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• reduction in number of days with frost to 1 day in 10 years</li> </ul>
<b>Rainfall decline</b>	<p><b>Seasonal Change in Rainfall patterns.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No clear signal for change in total rainfall</li> <li>• Up to 20% less rainfall for eastern parts in spring</li> <li>• 10% increase in summer and autumn</li> </ul> <p><b>Longer dry periods</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• More intense and frequent drought (increase in frequency by up to 10% by 2090)</li> <li>• Increase in drought risk greatest on east and west coasts and southern inland areas</li> </ul>
<b>Extreme rainfall and storms</b>	<p><b>Extreme rainfall</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No clear signal for change in total rainfall</li> <li>• more frequent and more extreme rainfall events</li> </ul> <p><b>Cyclones</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increase in severity (and possibly frequency) of ex-tropical cyclones reaching Northland - likely to bring heavier downpours coinciding with storm surge and damaging winds</li> </ul> <p><b>Wind</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular wind speeds are likely to increase by up to 10% by 2100</li> </ul>
<b>Changes to sea level and coastal hazards</b>	<p><b>Permanent Sea level rise:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0.6m by 2080 and up to 1.5m by 2130</li> <li>• Expansion of areas inundated by high tides</li> </ul> <p><b>Saltwater intrusion</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• saline intrusion into coastal aquifers</li> <li>• expansion of salt-water wedge further upstream in rivers and tidal floodplains</li> </ul> <p><b>More frequent storm surge</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• more frequent and intense coastal flooding</li> <li>• Increase in coastal erosion events</li> </ul>
<b>Marine effects</b>	<p><b>Ocean chemistry</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increasing acidification of the ocean</li> </ul> <p><b>Ocean heating</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Gradual increase in sea temperature.</li> <li>• More intense and frequent marine heatwaves</li> </ul>

<sup>4</sup> NIWA (2017) [https://www.nrc.govt.nz/media/i3qnkklo/northland-region-climate-change-projections-and-implications-summary-report\\_niwa.pdf](https://www.nrc.govt.nz/media/i3qnkklo/northland-region-climate-change-projections-and-implications-summary-report_niwa.pdf); also see NIWA (2016) <https://www.nrc.govt.nz/media/lr3e1fx/northlandregionclimatechangeandimplicationsself16102niwa.pdf>

## Different perspectives on climate risk

Climate change impacts and implications are complex and can be challenging to communicate. Depending on one's perspective or objectives, different approaches for engaging with climate risks bring different types of meaning or insight. Three approaches are presented below, each appropriate for different purposes.

The overview presented above adopts a **value domain** approach, as was used in the National Climate Change Risk Assessment (REF MfE 2020). This approach groups societal values into five domains (natural environment, built environment, human, economy and governance domains). Value domains can be a practical way to create high-level summaries of climate change impacts from multiple hazards, but tend to compartmentalise and separate social values, and has shortcomings from a risk management perspective (due to the grouping of disparate hazards and stressors) and does not reflect Māori values.

**Māori perspectives** see the world in a very different light to Pākehā, and climate impacts on Māori are felt on a Wairua (spiritual) level. Te Ao Māori, a Māori worldview, is often underpinned by the interconnectedness to the natural world through whakapapa to Ranginui and Papatuanuku and multi-generational perspectives based on responsibility to their tūpuna and generations yet to be born. Māori perspectives are also defined by relationships, and in terms of working with councils on addressing the consequences of climate change, are underpinned by legacy issues relating to colonisation, loss of land and the at times fractured relationships with the crown and councils (some hapū in Northland do not recognise the authority of the crown or councils).

The 'Impacts on Māori' section in Part 2 of the strategy explores these issues further.

Using **systems diagrams** is a way to conceptualise climate risks that can help show the connectivity between different climate impacts and 'value domains'. Local government is tasked with managing a large range of activities that will potentially require adaptation to climate impacts, requiring an understanding of how climate risks will propagate across value domains and hazards. Systems diagrams can illustrate cascading and accumulating interactions of risks, showing some of the complexity driven by feedback loops that needs to be considered when making risk management decisions. Systems diagrams were used to collate the rich textual data collected in a series of workshops with council staff and hapū representatives (p8) in February 2021.

As our understanding of the complexities of climate change develop, our conceptual models of climate impacts will need to evolve and improve. We need to remember that climate risks accumulate over time, achieving critical thresholds beyond which current approaches to risk management will no longer work. Climate risks can also be non-linear in their onset or consequences, or have surprising interactions with other risks, increasing uncertainty and making time-bound projections of impacts extremely challenging.

In addition, adaptation responses themselves can carry risks, and developing plans and policy requires nuanced foresight to anticipate unintended consequences. Uncertainty in the form of knowledge gaps also limits our ability to accurately describe and respond to climate risks.

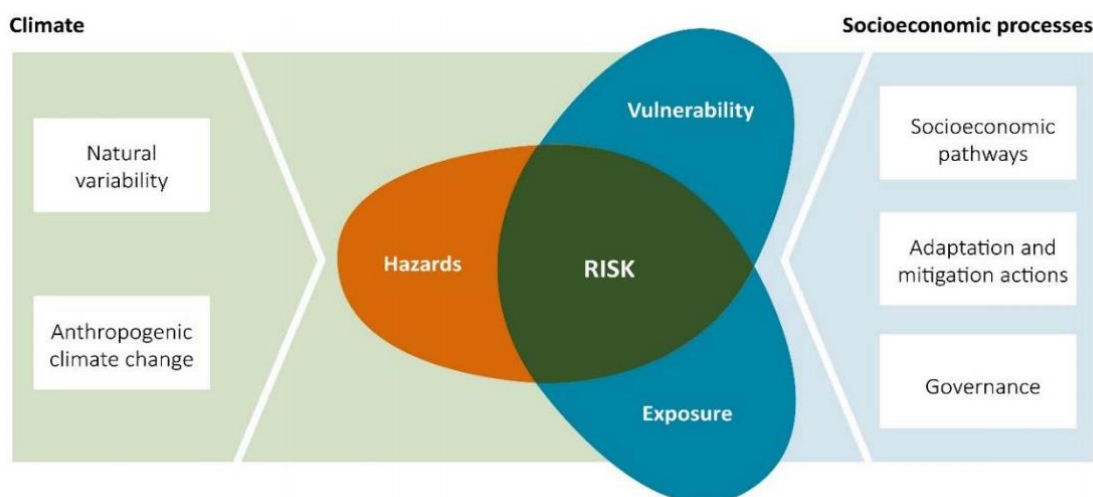
# Managing climate risks

## Risk management

Effective adaptation means good risk management, requiring planning which draws on the knowledges from our past that we have available to us, responds to the changing portfolio of risks facing our region and works with the needs of both current and future generations. Different approaches to managing climate change risks need to consider the three factors contributing to risk: a) hazard, b) exposure and c) vulnerability (see Fig 1). These might include a) consequences of a hazard or stressor, and if the risk is due to a slow-onset stressor (e.g. tidal inundation), or an episodic hazard event (e.g. flood); b) how likely and widespread the exposure is; and c) the vulnerability of the community or ecosystem being impacted.

A key challenge of managing climate change risks is that risks are constantly changing, creating uncertainties in our ability to project accurate timeframes, for instance the rate of sea level rise, the frequency and severity of drought, or the spread of novel environmental pests. This requires councils to develop programmes that are responsive to changing risks and flexible in the type and timing of risk management responses and do not commit to a particular irreversible course of action.

Figure 1. Climate change risks as the confluence of three drivers (based on IPCC 2014)



## Risk management explained

**Risk avoidance** approaches are used where exposure to potential climate risks can be circumvented. This could be where exposure to risks has not yet occurred, such as rules restricting new development and infrastructure in high-risk hazard zones, or preventing the establishment of new invasive pest species.

Where exposure already exists, **risk elimination** may be possible, for example through the planned relocation of services and infrastructure, managed retreat of urban areas from coastal hazard areas, or the translocation of temperature-sensitive species to cooler climates.

However, in some instances climate risks will be unavoidable. **Risk reduction** actions can help minimise the probability or consequences of exposure to hazards or stressors. This might include interventions such as providing flood or erosion protection for properties in coastal or river hazard zones, changing to less vulnerable land uses, or by improving the reliability of local water supplies during drought.

While some interventions may not eliminate risk altogether, they may enable the current system to operate until the risks become too large to manage. **Improving the resilience**, or ability of communities or ecosystems to continue functioning and prepare to adapt, is another risk management approach where exposure to risk is inevitable. This might involve improving the ability of a native ecosystem to cope with drought by managing pollution or pests, or by helping develop community response plans to enable towns to recover quickly following floods.

Finally, situations exist where it is necessary to **accept risks** and adapt to change. Such approaches might include adopting different building practices (e.g. flood shutters to deal with regular flood events), acknowledging a lower 'level of service' will be provided by infrastructure, or by managing populations of established invasive species.



# Climate impact diagrams

Climate risks are likely to interact in complex ways, creating compound effects that cascade between and across our environment, society and economy over time. A systems approach is useful to appreciate and communicate the complexity of interacting and cascading elements when trying to understand climate impacts.

Describing the web of potential risks can be difficult due to difficulties in communicating complicated related climate impacts that traverse different ways of understanding risk and value, including cultural, social, financial, economic, biological and engineering perspectives. In addition, as the number of logical steps increases, so does the degree of uncertainty involved in the assessment. of risk.

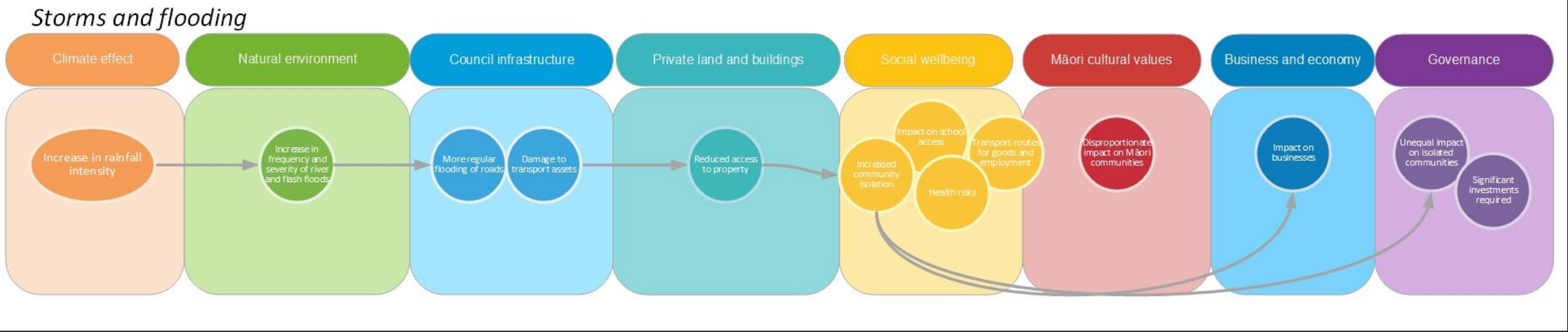
Climate impact diagrams are a type of ‘systems map’ that attempt to show the complex inter-relationships between the effects of climate change hazards and stressors on the things we value (value elements). Interconnecting arrows show the flow of causality between value elements, and how impacts cascade across different groups of elements. In this case we have used value domains to group ‘value elements’, but other groupings could be used, such as those developed with hapū or local communities.

## Methodology

Perceived climate impacts on local government activities were discussed during a series of six participatory workshops held with local government staff and Tangata whenua representatives during February 2020. Workshop attendees discussed and brainstormed climate risks to local government responsibilities and Māori cultural values based on their areas of expertise. Attendees acknowledged the difficulty in separating out different hazards and elements of concern and were encouraged to use creative means to document their thoughts. A variety of methods were used in the workshops including lists, pictures and systems diagrams.

Information from the workshops was collated in tables, arranged with climate hazard and stressor categories in the vertical axis, and ‘value domains’ in columns. We used impact chain diagrams to display the causal interaction of climate impacts across the different value domains. Using this technique, we could summarise multifaceted information from the workshops into a straightforward diagram and avoid large sections of text.

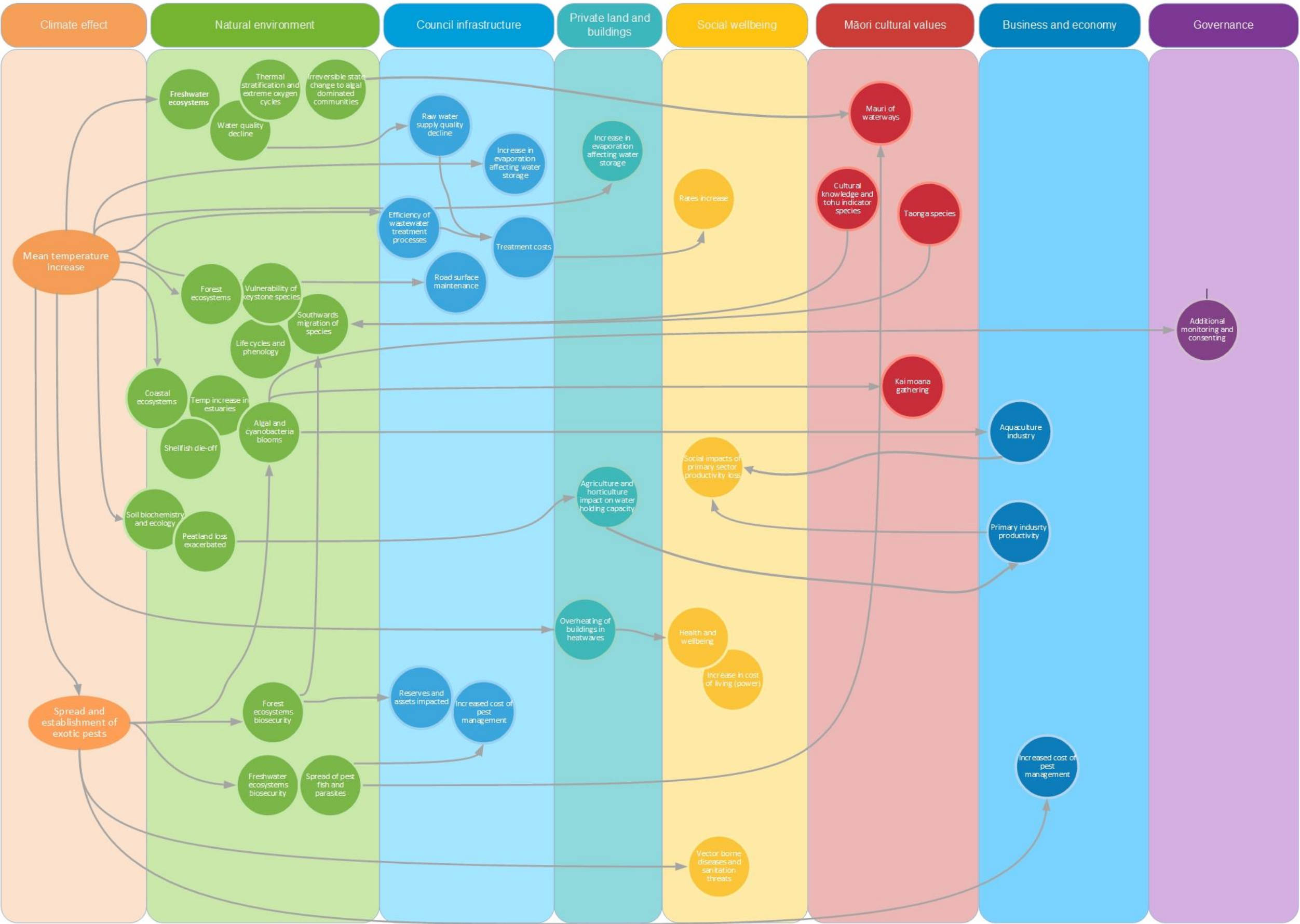
An example of the logic of a simple impact chain diagram is shown below:



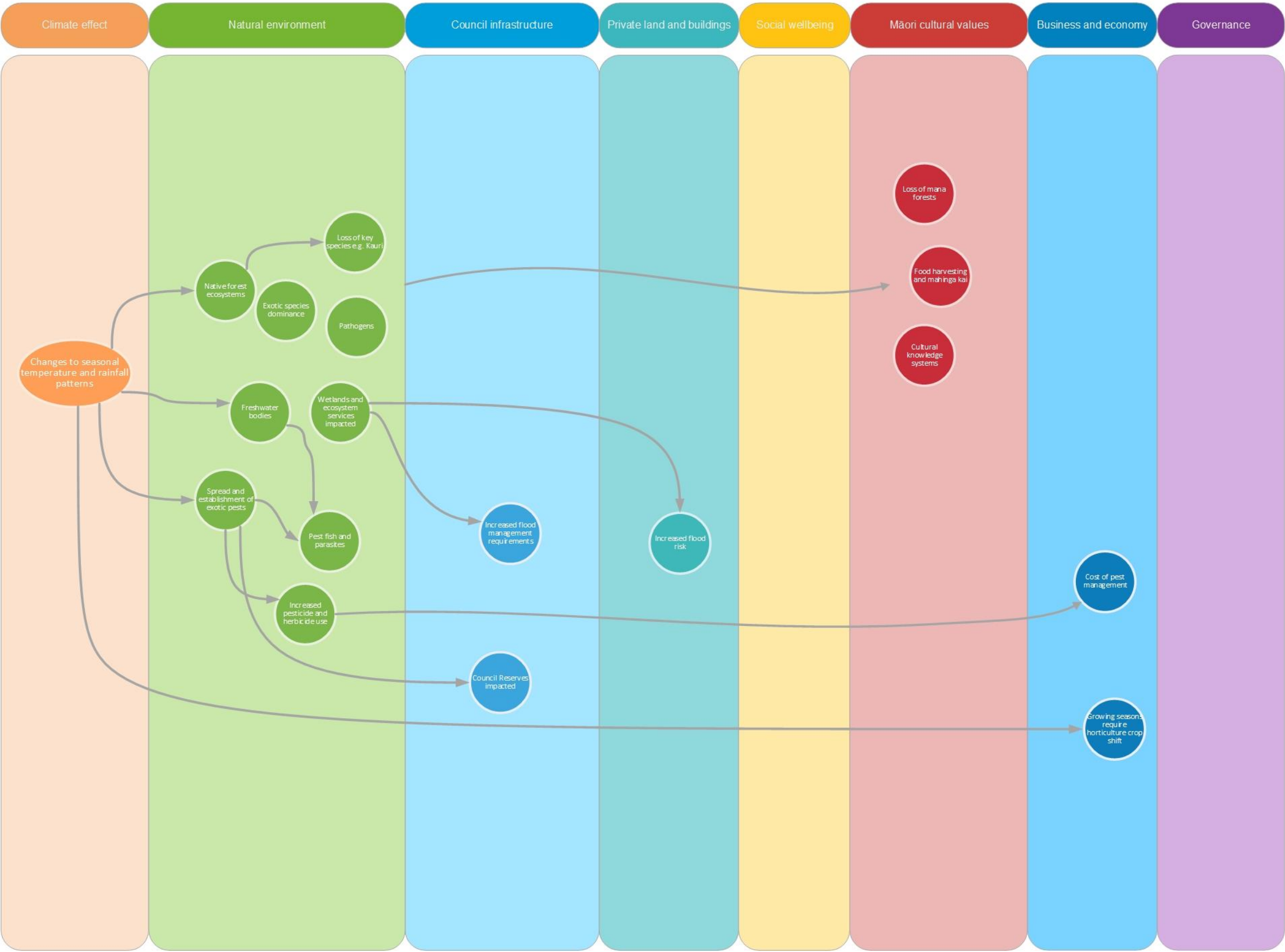
Impact chain diagrams are grouped by climate hazard and presented below as A3 foldouts:

1. Mean temperature increase and heatwaves (p.9)
2. Changing seasons (p.10)
3. Drought and mean rainfall decline (p.11)
4. Wildfire (p.12)
5. Extreme rainfall and storms (p.13)
6. Coastal flooding and erosion (p.14)
7. Permanent tidal inundation due to sea level rise (p.15)
8. Marine impacts (p.16)

Mean temperature increase and heatwaves

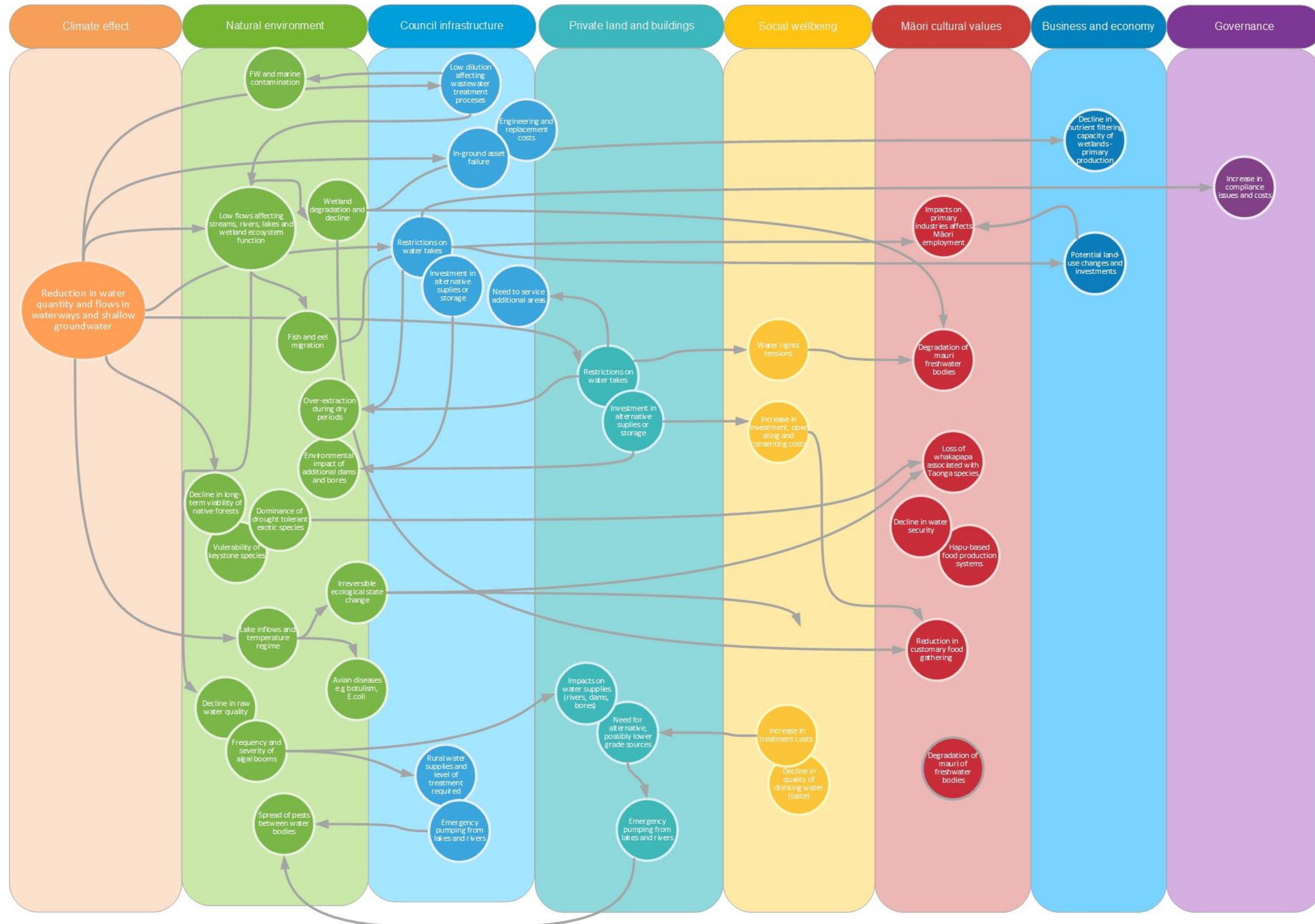


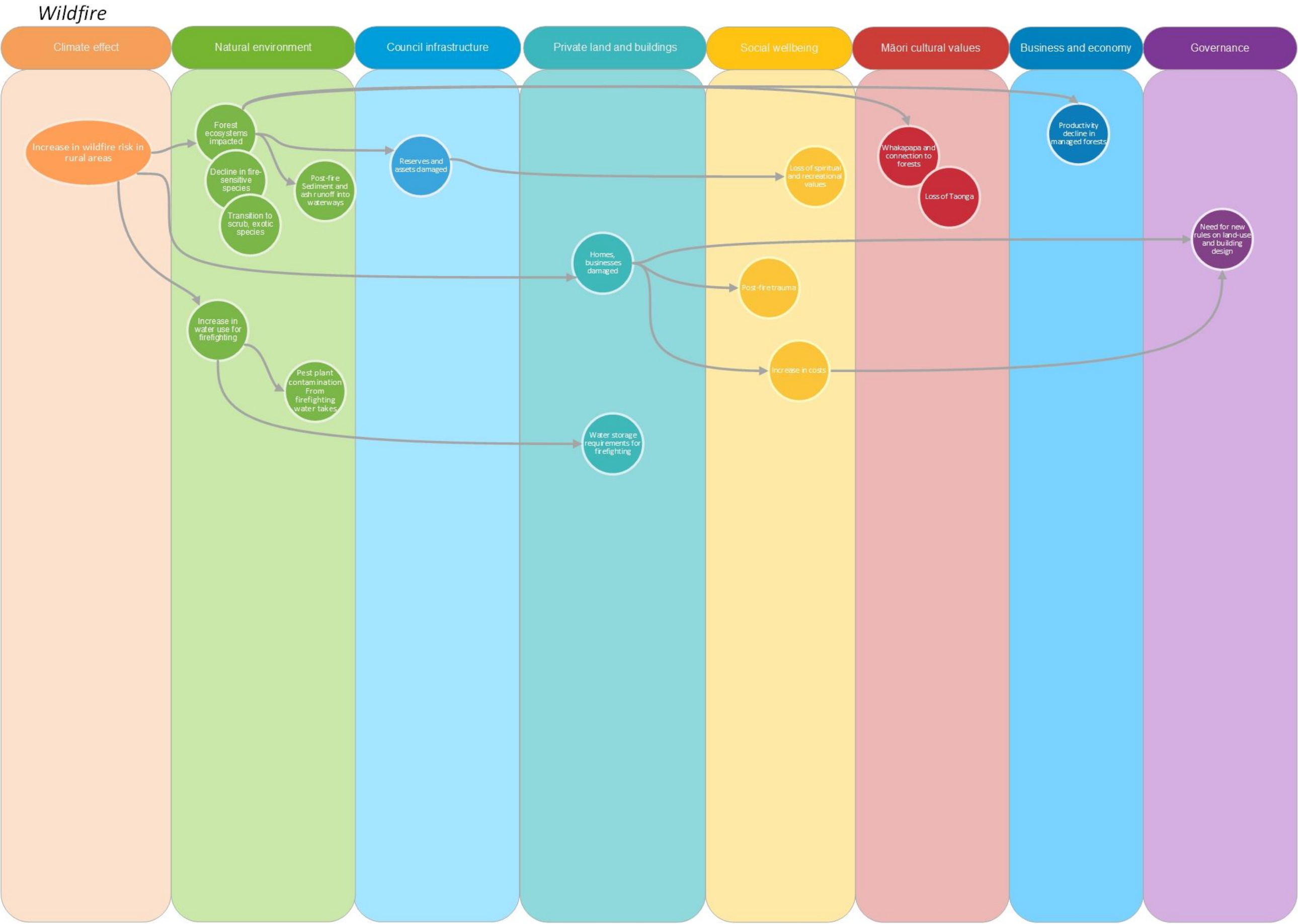
Changing seasons



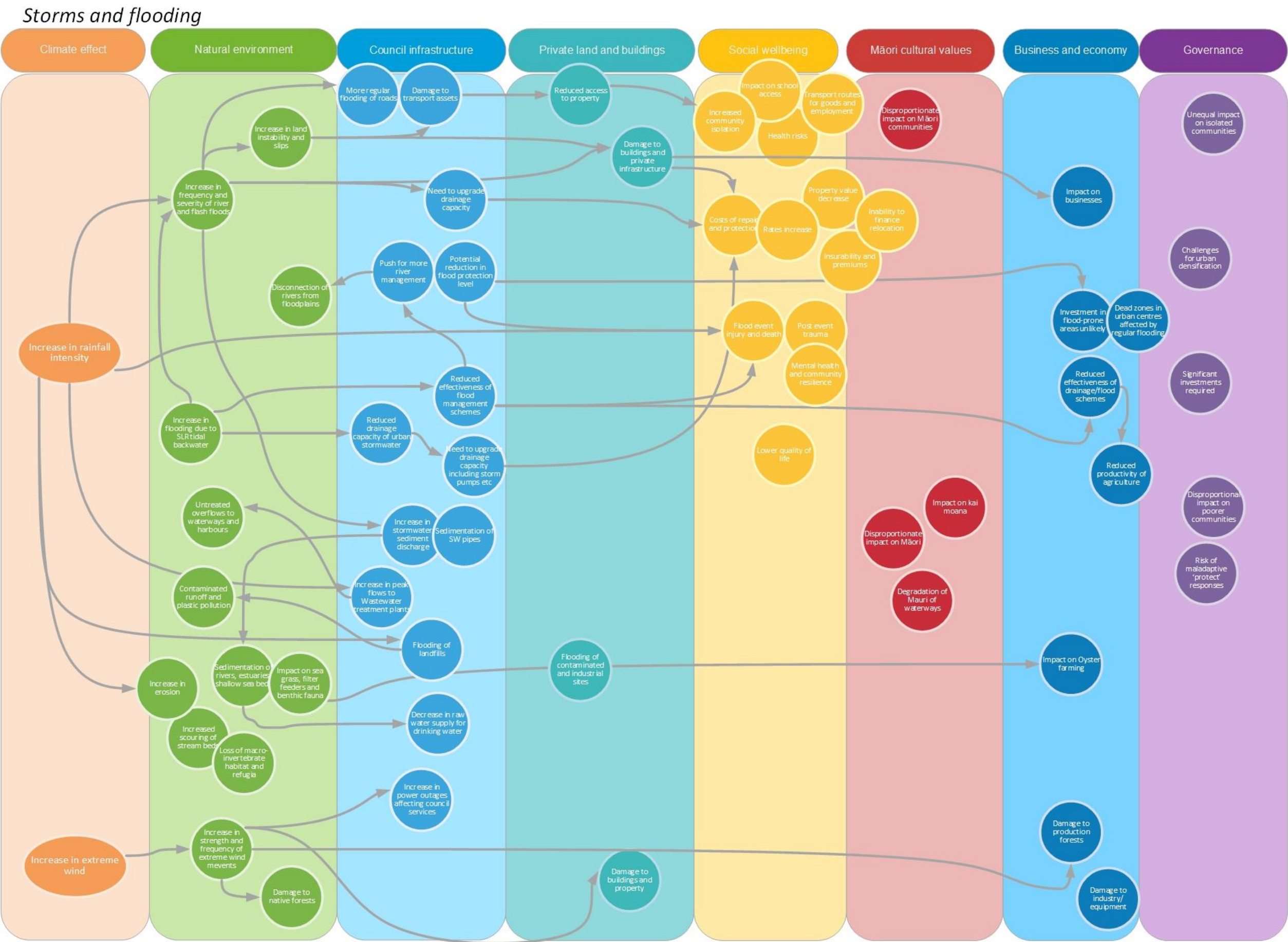


### ***Drought and mean rainfall decline***

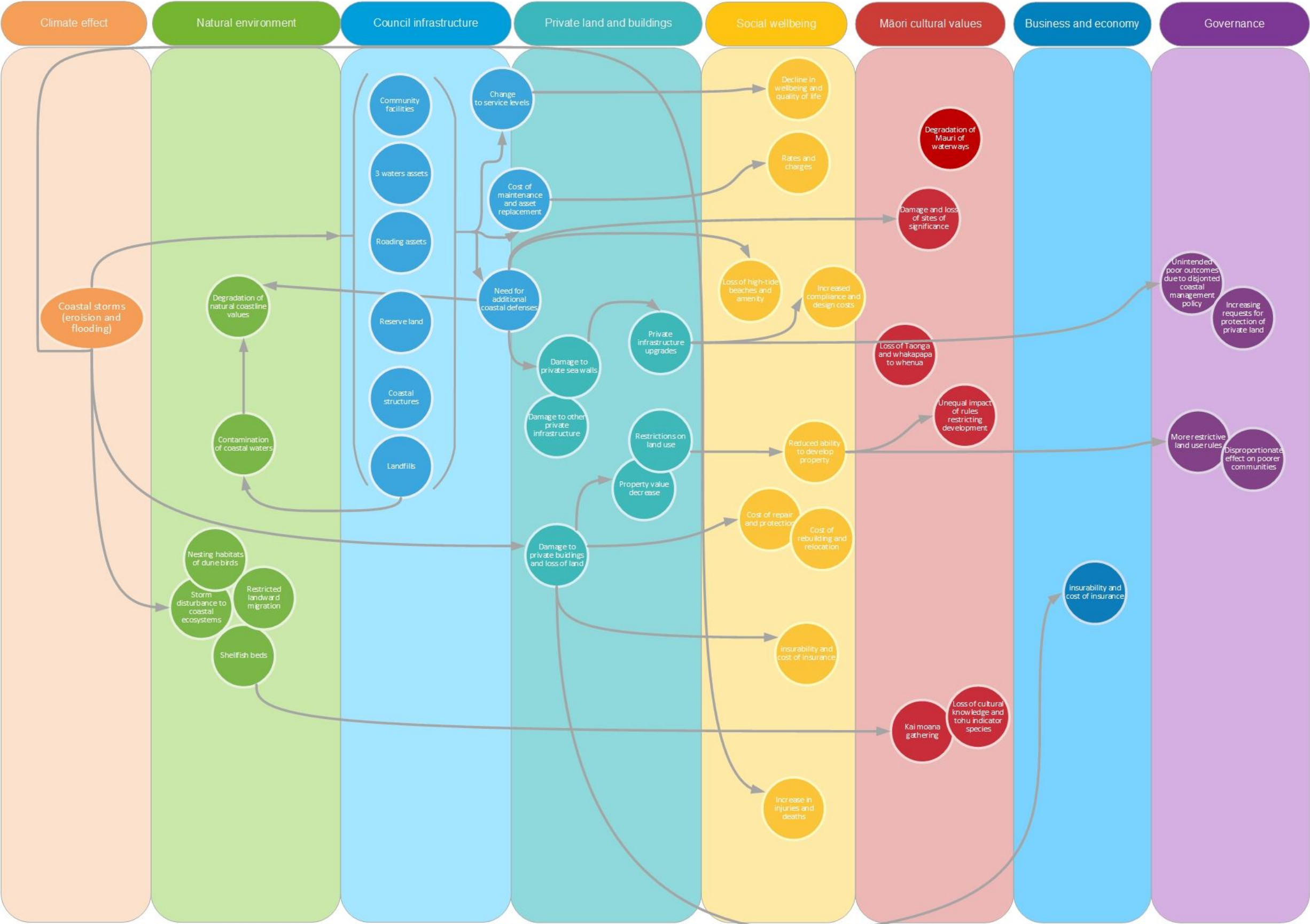






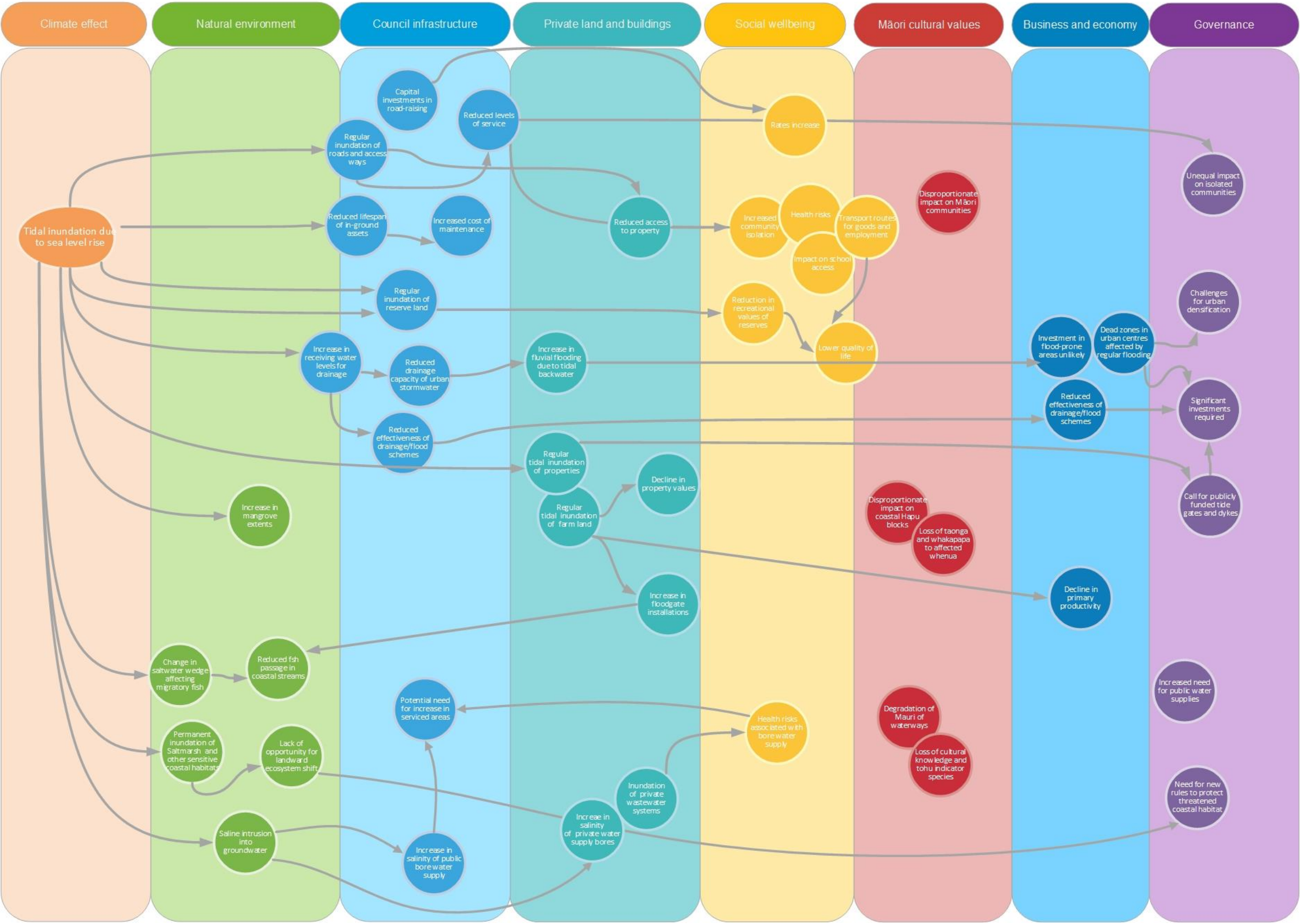


Coastal flooding and erosion



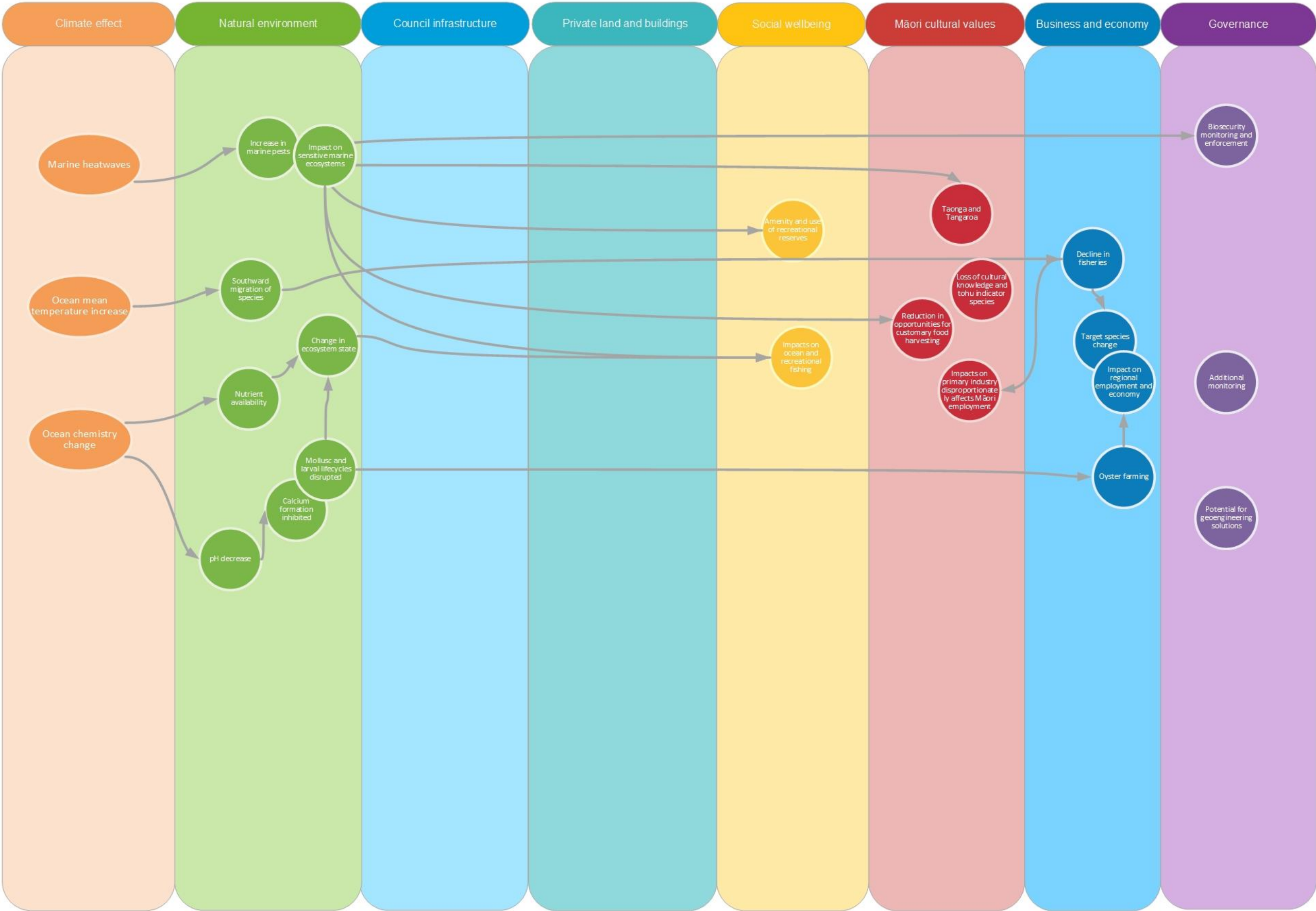


Permanent tidal inundation due to sea level rise





Marine



April 2022

# Te Tai Tokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy



Far North District  
tangata whenua  
representatives



NRC Tai Tokerau Māori  
and Council (TTMAC)  
representatives

Whangārei District  
tangata whenua  
representatives



Kaipara District  
tangata whenua  
representatives





## Table of Contents

Foreword.....	5
Executive summary .....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
Foundations .....	7
What are we doing and why is it important?.....	8
Part 1. Background and context.....	12
<i>Understanding and communicating about climate change</i> .....	12
<i>Central and local government adaptation: roles and responsibilities</i> .....	14
<i>What can the councils do?</i> .....	16
Part 2. Key adaptation issues, responses and opportunities .....	18
1. <i>Governance and management</i> .....	18
2. <i>Impacts on Māori</i> .....	24
3. <i>Coastal communities</i> .....	30
4. <i>Water availability</i> .....	34
5. <i>Natural hazards</i> .....	37
6. <i>Ecosystems and biosecurity</i> .....	40
7. <i>Public infrastructure</i> .....	46
Part 3. Enabling effective adaptation.....	57
Part 4. An evolving strategy .....	60
<i>Reporting</i> .....	63

## Signatory page

Whangarei District Council

Whangārei District tangata whenua representatives

Far North District Council

Far North District tangata whenua representatives

Kaipara District Council

Kaipara District tangata whenua representatives

Northland Regional Council

NRC Tai Tokerau Māori and Council (TTMAC) representatives

## About the authors

In early 2020, chief executives and mayors of the four Northland councils recommended the establishment of the collaborative Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee. It was agreed that the Joint Committee be comprised of eight members with an equal representation (50:50) of councillors and iwi/hapū representatives from across the region. Each council nominated one elected member (with another as back-up/alternate) and one iwi/hapū representative (with another as backup/alternate).

The Te Tai Tokerau Māori and Council Working Party provided their nominations for membership on behalf of Northland Regional Council at their March 2020 meeting. District council elected member representatives were determined at the respective council meetings. District council tangata whenua representatives were nominated through tangata whenua forums and then endorsed by representative bodies (Far North District Council, Whangarei District Council), or through direct engagement based on partnership agreements (Kaipara District Council).

This strategy was drafted in a collaborative process by Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau, a joint working group made up of staff from all four Northland councils (Kaipara, Whangarei and Far North District councils, and Northland Regional Council), as well as hapū and iwi representatives. A key objective for the group is to align local government climate adaptation policy, information and methodologies, and pursue collaborative opportunities to enable effective regional adaptation planning.

This strategy has been endorsed by Northland's Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee; a formal standing committee set up under the Local Government Act 2002. Each council has independently contributed to, reviewed and formally adopted this strategy.



## Foreword

There is no longer any doubt our climate is changing – we are facing a climate crisis. The question now is what will the impacts be, and how can we best prepare our people, places and industries?

New Zealand's government declared a climate emergency on 2 December 2020 and holds the lead responsibility for Aotearoa's transition to a low-emissions society and economy. Local government has a supporting role in this climate change mitigation mahi, to assist and enable the required transitions in districts and regions.

Climate change adaptation, however, must be led by councils, iwi, hapū, industry stakeholders and the wider community. This strategy represents a first step by Northland councils towards a collaborative, region-wide response to the impacts of climate change. We are already living with the effects of a changing climate, and many communities in Te Tai Tokerau have been using their own resources and networks to develop plans to prepare and adapt. Through this strategy, Northland councils and tangata whenua are building on these plans, seeking integration and alignment across the region, and working to create meaningful partnerships to help us all adapt together.

This strategy is the foundation that sets out our commitment to taking action, to aligning with our communities, to listening, understanding, and working together. We expect the strategy will evolve and actions will change as this adaptation kaupapa progresses and our understanding grows.

Through this strategy, we are asking these important questions of ourselves and of Te Tai Tokerau. What do our communities need to effectively adapt to the impacts of our changing climate? What can councils do to support local initiatives? Where are the areas that are most at risk, who are the most vulnerable? What information should we be guided by and what flow-on effects should we be planning for? How does the climate change kaupapa fit with tangata whenua whakaaro, and how can councils integrate and honour that whakaaro in future planning cycles?

These questions need to be carefully worked through; bringing representatives from Northland councils and tangata whenua to the same table to develop this strategy has been an important first step. The scale and complexity of the climate challenges ahead provide an opportunity for inclusive, progressive and creative solutions. Our actions and decisions from now must be focused on the future we want for our children's children.

Together, we can adapt and thrive.

**Amy MacDonald – Chair**

**“If fear is on one end of the scale, then complacency is on the other.”**

– Delaraine Armstrong, Te Orewai hapū of Ngāti Hine, Deputy Chair of Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau

As a tangata whenua descendent of 31 generations from Kupe arriving in Aotearoa, through my earliest Ngāpuhi whakapapa to Rahiri, to a further 20 more generations till I feature, I am anchored firmly to Te Ao Māori through my Ngāti Hinetanga, through the hapū of Te Orewai. As such, I am typically representative of iwi Māori.

Before Kupe, we tātai through the cosmic creation of the universe, to the creation of ngā Atua followed by the common physical world where tangata have evolved. Change is dynamic in this holistic world view. The view and responsibility for tangata whenua and climate change is physical, spiritual and social across generational relationships from the long past and into the distant future.

The ethnocentric lens of Te Ao Māori is fundamentally different to the dominant cultural view of the natural world in which tangata whenua live and interact. The differences between the indigenous world view and the prevailing world view creates systemic differences which divide us and, in many instances, create inequities for tangata whenua, including and beyond climate change. The definition of tangata whenua, as people of the whenua, personifies the spiritual relationship between tangata whenua and the natural world. This world view is difficult to capture and genuinely have regard for in the current structural practice and implementation of local government bureaucracy, including climate change adaptation.

We must work hard to rebalance the systemic framework, and co-design new, relevant tools and practices to ensure tangata whenua are resourced to work in genuine partnership to reduce the gaping inequities for Māori communities who are kaitiaki of the previous generations of sovereign rights and responsibilities over wahi tapu, whenua Māori and the broader landscape of Aotearoa. The concept of property rights is in direct conflict with tangata whenua relationships to the whenua, ngā awa, ngā maunga, te ngāhere. This is the challenge confronting the development of climate adaptation and the many other reforms that are interactive in addressing natural resource management in the future.

The rhetoric of tangata whenua involvement must be genuinely enabled and supported. However, this responsibility doesn't sit only with non-Māori. Tangata whenua must step into the space we demand and provide clear advice and structural options for a new framework to work with councils. The beginning of this journey in Tai Tokerau is reflective of the willingness to do that, but far more resource is needed to build capability and capacity with tangata whenua, communities and workforces.

**Delaraine Armstrong – Deputy Chair**

## Executive summary

Our planet is on an undeniable climate change trajectory. We now know more about the causes and implications of climate change than ever before, and our timeframes have shifted from imminent to immediate. Effects are already being felt across Te Tai Tokerau. It is our responsibility to identify ways in which the councils can help communities adapt to the localised impacts of a changing climate.

The main, and most urgent, response to the causes of climate change is mitigation through reducing greenhouse gas emissions. While central government controls the main policy and economic levers to drive emissions reductions nationally, the councils can and should help the transition towards net-zero emissions. However, this will not resolve the need to address the impacts of climate change that are already locked in.

This strategy focuses on adapting to the impacts of climate change in Te Tai Tokerau. It is not a solution to climate change impacts and risks. It indicates the strategic and practical direction our local councils need to take to create equitable, lasting adaptation approaches that have positive outcomes for our communities and natural environment.

The strategy outlines the key ways climate change will affect council functions and services, lists some of the councils' current adaptation actions, and proposes future actions that are likely to be required. Affected council services cover a wide range of activities, and are presented as seven broad themes:

1. governance and management
2. impacts on Māori
3. coastal communities
4. water availability
5. natural hazards
6. ecosystems and biosecurity
7. public infrastructure.

The strategy also outlines a comprehensive programme of actions covering four areas where the councils can improve their response to climate change (see Part 5):

1. building stronger relationships and partnerships
2. improving how the councils understand climate impacts and the risks they pose to communities and the natural environment
3. taking concrete actions to reduce existing and projected risks
4. building capacity to respond.

These actions are divided into short-, medium- and long-term categories. Short-term actions are the immediate priority. Te Tai Tokerau is already experiencing the effects of a changing climate. These impacts will continue to increase in the coming decades. Some changes, such as sea level rise, will take centuries to slow or reverse, and some may be irreversible. Te Tai Tokerau councils need to understand and prepare for climate risks to reduce the impacts of these changes.

Climate impacts compound existing factors that reduce well-being and have a large and potentially disproportionate effect on Te Tai Tokerau's tangata whenua. Climate change affects their relationship with te taiao and ngā whenua (the natural world and the land), cultural and whānau values, and iwi/hapū taonga.



Tangata whenua hold evidence-based knowledge of Te Tai Tokerau's history, natural environment and communities, which is integral to addressing climate impacts. Developing strong and lasting partnerships with tangata whenua is key to a successful long-term response to climate change.

Councils have an important role to play to support the resilience of communities and natural systems as we adapt to climate impacts. They possess tools that can help address climate impacts, such as planning frameworks and the provision of infrastructure. Given the complexity of climate change's challenges, it is essential for the councils to work alongside iwi/hapū, communities and stakeholders to co-develop flexible solutions that address existing limitations on wellbeing, respond as the climate shifts, and recognise opportunities for betterment.

This strategy, including its recommended priority actions, is a living document. Our responses to climate change need to be dynamic, so significant changes in evidence, community context and legislation can inform how our adaptation approaches evolve. Ongoing engagement with tangata whenua and communities is likely to highlight new evidence and perspectives that may result in changes to how the councils approach, resource and implement adaptation.

There are also significant changes in government legislation currently in development, including Resource Management Act reform, a new Climate Change Adaptation Act, Three Waters Reform and the creation of a national adaptation plan. These will lead to a greater focus on climate change, and new tools for local government to carry out adaptation actions.

Case law is also developing apace. Councils are now being challenged in the courts on planning decisions, both for being overly restrictive and for not taking sufficient precautions. In addition, new law in Aotearoa requires the mandatory disclosure of financial risks associated with climate change by financial institutions. This new law is likely to affect local government, as insurance and banking organisations seek to reduce risk exposure.

Given this rapidly evolving physical, social, legislative and legal environment, councils need to be extremely attentive and agile in developing climate change programmes and policy. This strategy has an inbuilt review function that enables it to respond to changes as needed, allowing future adaptation approaches to progressively build on the foundations currently being developed.

The purpose of creating a regional strategy is to ensure the approach to climate change adaptation by Te Tai Tokerau councils is robust, consistent and coordinated. The Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee and the Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau working group provide a platform to support this coordinated approach and ensure the effective use of resources. While this is a team effort, each council will need to take responsibility for individual actions as part of realising the joint approach.

If councils, iwi/hapū and communities work together flexibly across Te Tai Tokerau, we can be resilient in the face of climate change.

# Foundations

## WHAKATAUKĪ

**Te amorangi ki mua, te hapai o ki muri.**

The leader at the front and the workers behind the scenes.

This is about everyone having a role, playing a part. It is a reference to marae protocol where the speakers are at the front of the meeting house and the workers are at the back making sure everything is prepared and that the guests are well looked after. Both jobs are equally important, and without one, everything would fail.

## SCOPE AND PURPOSE

Mitigating climate change through emissions reduction and carbon removal is the urgent, primary response we must adopt to address climate change. Central and local governments have roles in mitigation, providing information and support, setting rules and policy, and making operational decisions. All Northland councils are working on reducing greenhouse gas emissions through complementary strategies and plans.

Given a certain amount of warming is locked in, the necessary, secondary council response to climate change is to implement measures that ensure our people and environment can adapt to current and future climate impacts. This can include limiting the exposure to climate hazards and increasing resilience and adaptive capacity.

This strategy is intended to ensure positive long-term outcomes for Northland. We can do this by embracing a robust, collaborative approach to developing local government adaptation responses to the impacts of climate change. Building a foundation for effective local action also involves acknowledging the need to remain agile in a changing legislative environment.

## Vision

The people and the environment of Te Tai Tokerau thrive and are resilient in a changing climate.

## Mission statement

Across Te Tai Tokerau, we work together with iwi/hapū partners, communities and stakeholders to proactively understand, plan for, and respond to the impacts and opportunities of climate change.

## Principles

- **Treaty of Waitangi and Te Tiriti o Waitangi:** work collaboratively with tangata whenua, demonstrating the principles of partnership, participation and protection.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Local government has responsibilities under the LGA and RMA in relation to the Treaty of Waitangi. The Treaty is referenced as 'the Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti o Waitangi)' in the definition of the RMA and has the same definition as in the Treaty of Waitangi Act 1975, being that the 'Treaty' means the Treaty of Waitangi as set out in English and in Māori in Schedule 1 (*of the Act*). For hapū in Te Tai Tokerau, He Whakaputanga o nga Rangatira o Nui Tireni and Te Tiriti o Waitangi need to be read together and Te Tiri o Waitangi forms the basis for the relationship between hapū and local government.

- **Whanaungatanga:** work together to build relationships and a sense of connection across the region, enabling sincere partnerships and collaborative working relationships.
- **Western science and mātauranga Māori:** alongside Western science, enable mātauranga Māori (Māori knowledge) to help understand climate change and inform decisions.<sup>2</sup> The right answers for the future are best found by first understanding the mātauranga left to us by our tūpuna.<sup>3</sup>
- **Equitable:** empower communities and ensure ‘no one is left behind’ through fair and tika processes, resourcing and outcomes.
- **Considered:** use research-led, evidence-based, values-driven policy and decision-making to proactively manage risks and identify opportunities.
- **Ka mua, ka muri:** walking backwards into the future – balance present-day needs and responsibilities with the rights of future generations, learning from the past using guidance from our ancestors.
- **Transformative:** use innovation to take advantage of opportunities to build a better future.
- **Transition:** address and reduce transition risks.
- **Holistic:** strengthen the four wellbeings – enhancing social wellbeing, regenerating mauri and environmental systems, supporting cultural values, and promoting economic resilience.
- **Integrated:** embed a climate change lens across all council activities and align adaptation with emissions reduction.

## Objectives

- Improve and broaden our understanding of the risks of climate change in Te Tai Tokerau, especially in relation to local government activities.
- Clarify adaptation needs and responsibilities.
- Identify opportunities to improve local government adaptation responses.
- Recommend priority actions for local government.
- Outline a process by which the strategy will be responsive to feedback and changing circumstances.

The principles and objectives of this strategy align with the vision of all four councils, and iwi and hapū member reference groups.<sup>4</sup> The objectives and priority actions also align with the strategic goals identified by Northland Regional Council’s Te Tai Tokerau Māori and Council Working Party that relate to climate change (goals 10, 11 and 12).

# What are we doing and why is it important?

## Climate change will increasingly affect Northland’s wellbeing

A changing climate affects our social and cultural wellbeing, our businesses and economy, our homes, buildings and infrastructure, and the ecosystems and natural world that surround us. We are seeing and experiencing effects on these realms now. From a te ao Māori perspective, the environment can be understood as the

<sup>2</sup> Te Iwi o Ngātiwai, Iwi Environmental Policy Document, 2007.

<sup>3</sup> Ngāti Hine, Ngā Tikanga mo te Taiao o Ngāti Hine: Ngāti Hine Iwi Environmental Management Plan, 2008.

<sup>4</sup> Far North District Council’s Climate Change Roadmap, Kaipara District Council’s Kaipara Ki Tua: Climate Smart Strategic Framework, Whangarei District Council’s Sustainability Strategy and Climate Action Plan, and Northland Regional Council’s climate change strategy *Ngā Taumata o te Moana*.

embodiment of generations of whakapapa from ngā atua.<sup>5</sup> Hapū and iwi report that the realms of ngā atua and kaitiaki are degraded, mauri has been destroyed and there is potential for detrimental environmental, cultural and social effects.<sup>6</sup> Generations to come will continue to experience the impacts of climate change.

Adaptation is the response to change. Adaptation helps us cope with the effects of climate change and reduces potential negative impacts. When we adapt, we reduce our exposure and vulnerability. We grow capacity in our communities, economies, and natural environment so we can keep adapting to whatever climate impacts are on the horizon.

Most importantly, adaptation offers opportunities for betterment. The legacy of our ancestors and the lives of our future generations are linked to the relationship we have with the natural environment. Adaptation is an opportunity to improve this relationship.

In meetings with elected members, opportunities such as the following were identified:

“What does going proactive on carbon banking look like?”

“What does it mean for tourism when we really become the winterless north? We keep telling people we are when actually we're not.”

“You can sell a product and have a carbon negative label on it.”

### Responding to climate change impacts will affect how local government operates

Northland councils have an important role to play in adaptation, including providing education and advice, as well as planning and implementing adaptation responses at a local and regional level. Together with hapū and iwi partners, our communities and central government, Northland councils need to plan for and manage impacts on the things we value to help local communities become more resilient.

This is a new, challenging space for Northland councils and for many communities. To best facilitate adaptation and assist communities, Northland councils will continually work to improve our information and approaches.

This strategy sets out a vision for how Northland councils can improve their ability to prepare for and adapt to the impacts of climate change. It sets out clear steps to position Northland councils to respond to climate change, and to support community responses as well as possible. Adaptation will increasingly be part of our core business.

### A strategy that evolves

Climate change is dynamic, and our understanding of its causes and consequences continues to evolve. Likewise, this strategy needs to be a living document so it can develop and adapt as Northland does. We will update this strategy as required, to respond to new evidence from mātauranga Māori and Western science, the changing needs of communities and iwi/hapū partners, and changes in the legislative and legal environment.

---

<sup>5</sup> Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust Board, Patuharakeke Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2014. Pg 12, 13.

<sup>6</sup> Te Iwi o Ngātiwai, Iwi Environmental Policy Document, 2007. Pg 11.

Ngāti Hau, Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2016.

Ngāti Hine, Ngā Tikanga mo te Taiao o Ngāti Hine: Ngāti Hine Iwi Environmental Management Plan, 2008.

Te Uri o Hau Settlement Trust Environs Holdings, Te Uri o Hau Kaitiakitanga o te Taiao, 2011.

Upcoming legislation, including the Climate Change Adaptation Act, may change the legal landscape and the tools the councils use to implement adaptation. There is some uncertainty around the details, but leading legal research<sup>7</sup> suggests councils should continue to follow best practice to ensure we are acting on our knowledge of climate impacts. The express aim of this strategy is to identify gaps and take advantage of opportunities to improve the councils' current capacity for adaptation decision-making, in preparation for new legislation.

This strategy also needs to respond to the voices of our communities and of tangata whenua. As Northland councils continue on this journey, feedback from iwi and hapū partners, communities, businesses and other stakeholders will continue long after the first version of this strategy is published. In particular, engagement with tangata whenua has so far been limited to feedback from iwi and hapū partner representatives. Actions within this strategy include a process to expand engagement across iwi and hapū to marae and whānau, to better reflect the understanding, experiences and aspirations of tangata whenua.

The strategy has six parts:

**Part 1. 'Background and context'** explains the rationale and context for the strategy.

**Part 2. 'Key adaptation issues, responses and opportunities'** provides detail on issues of concern, including governance and management, impacts on Māori, coastal communities, water availability, natural hazards, ecosystems and biosecurity, and public infrastructure.

**Part 3. 'Enabling effective adaptation'** outlines four areas for action to help improve adaptation responses in Northland: 1) improving knowledge and understanding, 2) growing relationships, 3) reducing risk and vulnerability, and 4) building capacity.

**Part 4. 'An evolving strategy'** outlines how the strategy will develop over time, in response to feedback and legislative changes.

**Part 5. 'Priority actions'** contains a list of 46 recommended actions for the councils.

**Part 6. 'Climate risk overview'** (technical report) provides an overview of different perspectives on climate change impacts and implications in Northland, and approaches to risk management.

---

<sup>7</sup> Iorns, Catherine and Stoverwatts, J, Adaptation to Sea-Level Rise: Local Government Liability Issues (July 1, 2019). Victoria University of Wellington Legal Research Paper No. 62/2020, Available at SSRN: <https://ssrn.com/abstract=3685492> or <http://dx.doi.org/10.2139/ssrn.3685492>



Enviroschools planting at Lake Waiporohita. See <https://enviroschools.org.nz/>



# Part 1. Background and context

## The need for adaptation

Adaptation is about responding to the impacts of climate change. Adaptation does not replace the need for urgent greenhouse gas emissions reductions; it acknowledges that the climate is changing and that, in the words of the United Nations, we need to “develop adaptation solutions and implement actions to respond to the impacts of climate change that are already happening, as well as prepare for future impacts”.<sup>8</sup>

Adaptation is a key component of the long-term global response to climate change, to protect people, livelihoods and ecosystems. Regardless of the success or speed of programmes to reduce global emissions, greenhouse gases already in the atmosphere have a ‘locked in’ warming potential. Additional warming is ‘virtually certain’<sup>9</sup> to keep exacerbating climate change and its impacts in coming decades.

The Climate Change Adaptation Technical Working Group, established by central government,<sup>10</sup> described effective adaptation as reducing the risks of climate change on two fronts:

- reducing the exposure and vulnerability of our social and cultural systems, natural and built environment (including physical assets), and economy
- maintaining and improving the capacity of our social, cultural, environmental, physical and economic systems to adapt.

There is an urgent need to understand, prepare for and respond to present-day and projected climate impacts. While local government will play a prominent leading role, we will also learn with and from our communities and mana whenua partners. Local knowledge, support and leadership will be vital for successful adaptation responses.

## Understanding and communicating about climate change

The impacts and implications of climate change are complex and can be challenging to understand and communicate. Different knowledge systems, perspectives, objectives, worldviews and values can bring very different approaches for engaging with climate risks and framing the issues. While these different ways of understanding the impacts of climate change can be complementary, they can also be confusing and can get in the way of developing solutions that work for everyone.

This strategy attempts to use a systems approach to draw on both a Western scientific understanding of climate impacts (which tends to compartmentalise issues, then look at relationships between them), as well as Māori perspectives (guided by the core principle of whanaungatanga connecting everything<sup>11</sup>). The Climate Risk Overview in Part 6 of this strategy (which is a technical report) explores this in more detail.

<sup>8</sup> <https://unfccc.int/topics/adaptation-and-resilience/the-big-picture/what-do-adaptation-to-climate-change-and-climate-resilience-mean>

<sup>9</sup> IPCC AR6 Climate change 2021 - the physical science basis. <https://www.ipcc.ch/report/ar6/wg1/#SPM>

<sup>10</sup> <https://environment.govt.nz/publications/adapting-to-climate-change-in-new-zealand-stocktake-report-from-the-climate-change-adaptation-technical-working-group/>

<sup>11</sup> Te Uri o Hau Settlement Trust Environs Holdings, Te Uri o Hau Kaitiakitanga o te Taiao, 2011.

In thinking about risks from climate change, the National Climate Change Risk Assessment for New Zealand<sup>12</sup> report adopted a Western scientific approach. It grouped societal values into five broad value domains (natural environment, built environment, human, economy and governance domains). Value domains of this nature can be a practical way to create high-level summaries of climate change impacts from multiple hazards, but can also compartmentalise and separate social values.

This framing of climate risks into separate domains can create practical problems when trying to develop adaptive solutions for interacting or compounding climate hazards that cut across different value domains. The systems approach for mapping climate risks, which is explored in the Climate Risk Overview (in Part 6), attempts to overcome this issue by using a causal diagram to show interactions between hazards and affected areas of society and the environment. Nonetheless, neither approach reflects or incorporates Māori values, and ongoing work is needed to build a shared understanding of climate risks.

From a te ao Māori perspective, the environment can be understood as the embodiment of generations of whakapapa from ngā atua.<sup>13</sup> Whanaungatanga describes genealogical relationships between people, between people and natural resources, even between related bodies of knowledge. Relationships of importance in mātauranga Māori are explained through kinship. Māori relationships with the cultural landscape are explained through whakapapa. The first step in understanding the Māori relationship with the landscape is to understand that descent from it is an essential Māori belief.<sup>14</sup>

#### **What is whanaungatanga and why is it important?**

Whanaungatanga: the principle of kinship. As explained in *Ko Aotearoa Tenei*, “In te ao Māori, all of the myriad elements of creation – the living and the dead, the animate and inanimate – are seen as alive and inter-related. All are infused with mauri (that is, a living essence or spirit) and all are related through whakapapa. Thus, the sea is not an impersonal thing but the ancestor-god Tangaroa, and from him all fish and reptiles are descended. The plants of Aotearoa are descendants of Tāne-mahuta, who also formed and breathed life into the first woman, and his brother Haumia-Tiketike. The people of a place are related to its mountains, rivers and species of plant and animal, and regard them in personal terms. Every species, every place, every type of rock and stone, every person (living or dead), every god, and every other element of creation is united through this web of common descent, which has its origins in the primordial parents Ranginui (the sky) and Papa-tu-ā-nuku (the earth). This system of thought provides intricate descriptions of the many parts of the environment and how they relate to each other. It asserts hierarchies of right and obligation among them.”

Pūrākau (stories, legends) and mātauranga passed down through generations describe the relationships with and between ngā atua, which help tangata whenua understand what practices need to be followed to tiaki (protect) the environment, to understand why certain effects and changes occur, and to identify the responses needed to address or adapt to the effects. Pūrākau also remind us that tūpuna (ancestors) Māori faced similar situations.

<sup>12</sup> <https://environment.govt.nz/publications/national-climate-change-risk-assessment-for-new-zealand-main-report/>

<sup>13</sup> Ngati Hau, Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2016

<sup>14</sup> Waitangi Tribunal Report, *Ko Aotearoa Tenei: A Report into Claims Concerning New Zealand Law and Policy Affecting Māori Culture and Identity*, 2011.



Discussing climate risks from these starting points could be more relevant for Māori communities, and the solutions that are identified may offer options for application in other locations.

## Central and local government adaptation: roles and responsibilities

Central and local government have different roles in adapting to climate change. Central government responsibilities are primarily delivered through functions set out in the Climate Change Response Act; and the key tools for adaptation are National Climate Change Risk Assessments and National Adaptation Plans. Once developed, these will set out government priorities and strategies for adaptation. The first national climate change risk assessment is complete, and the first National Adaptation Plan will be delivered before the end of 2022. Both are likely to have implications for local government, and influence adaptation at a regional and district level. We will need to review this strategy once the National Adaptation Plan is available.

Central government has also signalled its intention to reform the resource management system. This includes repealing New Zealand's core planning law, the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA), and replacing it with three new statutes. Among the reform's key objectives are to better prepare for adapting to climate change and risks from natural hazards, and to better mitigate emissions contributing to climate change. The government has indicated that climate change adaptation and mitigation will be central themes in all three new statutes developed through the reforms.

The reforms will affect local government and could change the functions and roles of the councils in climate change adaptation. It is very likely, though, that there will remain a strong role for local government in planning for and implementing adaptation at community and regional levels. This will include undertaking risk assessments for council-owned and maintained community assets.

The Waitangi Tribunal report following Wai 262, the most comprehensive of all government claims, included recommended changes to the Crown's laws, policies and practices – including

but not limited to intellectual property, indigenous flora and fauna, resource management, conservation, science, education and health. The objective of many of the proposed reforms was to establish genuine partnerships.<sup>15</sup> In response, central government is aiming to develop a whole-of-government approach to consider the issues raised by claimants and the Waitangi Tribunal in the Wai 262 enquiry. Direct and indirect changes for local

### New climate change legislation

The Ministry for the Environment is currently drafting new legislation and guidance as part of the RMA reform, which includes a Climate Change Response Act. These will change how local government is able to respond to climate change impacts.

Items specifically related to climate change include:

- Climate Change Adaptation Act: to address the legal and technical issues associated with managed retreat and adaptation.
- Adaptation funding mechanism: creating a national funding mechanism for proactive adaptation and risk mitigation.
- National Adaptation Plan: to determine the approach for climate change, including the measures and indicators required.

In response, we will need to review this strategy. A review process is laid out in Part 4 – 'An evolving strategy'.

<sup>15</sup> Te Pae Tawhiti: Wai 262 (tpk.govt.nz)

government are likely to result from this approach. These will need to be embedded in local government responsibilities, including climate change adaptation responses.

At a local government level, regional and district councils have different roles in adaptation which reflect their different functions. The Local Government Act 2002 states that the purpose of local government is (a) to enable democratic local decision-making and action by, and on behalf of, communities, and (b) to promote the social, economic, environmental and cultural wellbeing of communities in the present and for the future.

Regional councils are primarily concerned with environmental and coastal resource management and planning, flood management, water quality and quantity, pest control, and public transport. District councils (also known as territorial authorities) are responsible for a wide range of local services, including district planning, roads, stormwater, water reticulation, sewerage and refuse collection, libraries, parks, recreation services, cemeteries, local regulations, and community and economic development.

Councils need to plan for adaptation to manage the risks posed by climate change. Much of this responsibility relates to managing risks from natural hazards (such as coastal erosion or flooding) under the Resource Management Act 1991. Responsibility also extends to providing and managing infrastructure, obtaining technical information, managing natural resources and facilitating community adaptation processes. Adaptation, especially as it relates to increasing risks posed by natural hazards and climate change, is necessarily 'local' – hazards and values vary widely, as do response options.

Climate change mitigation (managing greenhouse gas pollution by reducing emissions and carrying out activities that capture and store carbon) is also a responsibility of local government. In New Zealand, the main mechanisms to enable broad emissions reductions lie with central government through the Climate Change Response Act 2002 and the Emissions Trading Scheme. However, the councils should work to reduce their own organisational emissions, and help enable the reduction of district and regional emissions through activities such as urban planning and public transport. Beginning in 2022, regional consents must also consider greenhouse gas emissions under the RMA.

As decision-making authorities delegated by the Crown, local government has a responsibility to uphold Treaty guarantees. Local government has legislated Treaty of Waitangi/Te Tiriti o Waitangi<sup>16</sup> (Treaty) responsibilities that are applicable in all our activities, including responding to climate change and local government's adaptation responsibilities. A Waitangi Tribunal precedent signals local government requirements and the enforcement of Treaty duties. While there are no Waitangi Tribunal claims specifically related to climate change adaptation, there are claims such as Wai 262 and enough relevant cases to demonstrate that Treaty principles of "active protection and partnership, especially the facilitation of consultation, will apply no matter what the process is".<sup>17</sup>

---

<sup>16</sup> Local government has responsibilities under the LGA and RMA in relation to the Treaty of Waitangi. The Treaty is referenced as 'the Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti o Waitangi)' in the definition of the RMA and is stated to have the same definition as in the Treaty of Waitangi Act 1975, being that the 'Treaty means the *Treaty of Waitangi as set out in English and in Maori in Schedule 1 (of the Act)*'. The LGA does not provide an interpretation or definition of the Treaty, but it does reference responsibilities to meet commitments from other enactments, which of course includes the RMA. The absence of the LGA specifically referring to one text or the other does not give us the option of choosing which text we think it is referring to – but in any case, the contra proferentem principle applies and the indigenous language text takes preference.

<sup>17</sup> Iorns Magallanes, 2019, p.62. Deep South Challenge, *Treaty of Waitangi duties relevant to adaptation to coastal hazards from sea-level rise* research is the most comprehensive and up-to-date work covering coastal hazards adaptation and Treaty duties.

## What can the councils do?

While the legislated functions of local government for managing the risks of natural hazards and providing infrastructure are well established, Northland councils are at an early stage in developing focused climate change adaptation responses. To date, these responses have broadly focused on capacity and relationship building, information gathering and analysis, and preparation and planning.

Councils have an important function in developing knowledge by investigating and collating locally relevant information on current and future climate change risks, and by undertaking ongoing monitoring and evaluation. They provide adaptation support to communities through leadership and guidance; and they can help enable co-designed solutions through community engagement and adaptation planning. Councils also manage climate risks, such as through land-use planning rules, providing public infrastructure, supporting emergency responses, and enhancing the resilience of natural systems.

While councils face many challenges as they begin climate adaptation journeys, there are many areas of strength and opportunity. Northland councils have developed strong inter-council working relationships and have background knowledge and information to support an ambitious works programme. All four councils and our hapū and iwi partners have collaborated to establish a joint governance committee on climate change adaptation. This group's existence is a milestone, and demonstrates the energy, commitment, knowledge, trust and networks characterising the partnership.

A growing awareness of climate change's significance and increasing support from council leadership enables the councils to take a stronger stand on adaptation planning. Widespread community buy-in and a desire for action to address climate change impacts also contribute to this approach. Public feedback through Long-Term Plan consultation processes has supported all four councils to significantly increase climate change adaptation funding in their 2021–2031 Long-Term Plans.


Tangata whenua have a strong interest in climate change adaptation. There is a significant opportunity for the councils and tangata whenua to build on the existing relationships formed at governance and staff levels, to partner in this mahi and achieve outcomes that everyone desires. Within hapū and iwi planning documents, reports to the councils and other government reporting, hapū and iwi within Te Tai Tokerau have articulated the challenges that local government processes and decision-making have created within the taiao (natural world) and their relationship with the taiao.<sup>18</sup> Engagement with tangata whenua has highlighted the need to consider legacy relationship challenges between local government and tangata whenua, as well as issues and other socio-economic drivers when understanding and planning for climate risks with Māori communities. Te Tai Tokerau councils have committed to working- and governance-level relationships with hapū and iwi in this mahi. This is positive, and reflects a shift in council thinking to heal relationships and work towards genuine partnership.

Te Tai Tokerau councils can also support other highly affected communities, such as our farming communities, to build resilience and plan for adaptation. We can build on existing local government and community initiatives and carry out targeted engagement to identify needs and opportunities unique to agriculture and horticulture. These opportunities extend beyond responsibilities specific to local government but are important for the wider

---

<sup>18</sup> Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust Board, Patuharakeke Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2014.

Waitangi Tribunal Report, *Ko Aotearoa Tenei: A Report into Claims Concerning New Zealand Law and Policy Affecting Māori Culture and Identity*, 2011. Chetham, J, Cooper J, Tautari R, *Tane Whakapiripiri: Lifting Nga Hapū o Whangārei Capacity to Engage with Local Government in Regard to Environmental Protection and Management*, 2019.



economic and social wellbeing of Northland's places and people and add momentum to the positive work already underway.

Part 2 of this strategy explores the key local government activities that are affected by climate change, what the current local government adaptation responses are, and highlights where opportunities have been identified as future actions by the four Northland councils. While the focus is on local government, we acknowledge a whole-of-community response to climate change will include activities and initiatives that are the responsibility of other agencies and parties. This could mean some local adaptation responses are led by non-council parties, such as iwi/hāpu or community groups.

## Part 2. Key adaptation issues, responses and opportunities

A wide range of issues regarding local government's response to climate change risks have been raised by iwi and hapū, elected members, council staff, and community members. These issues involve seven themes:

1. Governance and management
2. Impacts on Māori
3. Coastal communities
4. Water availability
5. Natural hazards
6. Ecosystems and biosecurity
7. Public infrastructure

The seven themes are discussed in detail here, with insight into relevant issues, current responses, and future opportunities specific to local government. The insights in this section also inform Part 3 – 'Enabling effective adaptation' which outlines future directions and areas for action. Reference is made within this section to related actions in Part 5 – Priority actions'.

While the grouping of the issues makes sense in a local government context, it may not align with the integrated and interconnected approach of Māori. There are other more relevant groupings to Māori such as the four pou: wai (from which everything emerges<sup>19</sup>), kai, whenua and whare (as used by Te Hau Ora o Ngāpuhi and others in the health sector). It is likely that the four pou will be a more effective approach to engage with Māori communities.

---

### 1. Governance and management

#### WHAT ARE THE KEY ISSUES?

Councils across Northland have started to acknowledge their role in developing climate change adaptation responses in recent years. There are still opportunities to improve. There are external and internal risks for the councils relating to governance and management of climate change adaptation. External risks include those arising from the uncertainty of climate projections and the lack of clear guidance from central government. Internal risks include those arising from inadequate internal council policies, processes and capabilities.

Despite these risks, not doing anything to adapt to climate change is considered to be the biggest risk of all.

---

<sup>19</sup> Ngāti Hine, Ngā Tikanga mo te Taiao o Ngāti Hine: Ngāti Hine Iwi Environmental Management Plan, 2008.

### External issues

Effective adaptation by local government is inhibited by external barriers. For example, the complexity of climate impacts, and the uncertainty in projections of those impacts, can lead to hesitancy to take action. National policy and guidance can be poorly defined or non-existent, which makes it challenging to align local government responses. Existing legislation does not enable pre-emptive actions to reduce climate risks. It provides only partial guidance for local government on how to integrate complex adaptation plans into local regulations. At the time of writing, central government is working on new legislation that may help to address these issues.

### Internal issues

Local government approaches to adaptation can be fragmented. There is often a lack of clarity about roles, responsibilities, and legal obligations. Internal policies and strategies can be poorly aligned. There is a risk that council responses to climate change will remain ad hoc, inconsistent, siloed, and potentially deferred. This could result in inadequate and inconsistent policy and strategic direction, leading to inappropriate infrastructure planning and poor community outcomes. For example, government approaches to environmental management are based on Euro-centric perspectives, which exclude Māori values. There is a risk that maintaining environmental management based on these perspectives may result in continued worsening environmental outcomes. This is expanded on in the next focus area, Part 2 – Impacts on Māori.

The relationships between the councils and communities is complex. In some places the two are disconnected or strained by historic issues. This is particularly evident in council relationships with Māori communities. The need for sincere engagement is acknowledged as a high priority. There are many opportunities for the councils to nurture ongoing relationships and incorporate a wider range of community views in decision-making processes. To be effective, adaptation planning will require building trust with communities. This will involve purposeful and resource-intensive engagement with communities across a range of areas.

Capacity to undertake effective adaptation actions will be an ongoing issue for the councils. There will be pressure on staff resourcing because there is a limited pool of adaptation expertise in the country and hiring and developing staff skills can be challenging. Furthermore, operational costs are high for risk assessments and adaptation planning, and funding of adaptation implementation actions is not secured.

Climate change adaptation requires shared understanding of climate risks across the organisation(s). At present there is no consistent approach to the integration of adaptation objectives into the councils' planning processes. For example, climate risk assessments in infrastructure asset management plans are not standardised. This is due to the emerging nature of the issue and the fact there is no policy to require consistent consideration of climate change in planning and decision-making. Climate change risks may not be sufficiently acknowledged, monitored, or disclosed. The ownership of mitigation actions is not clearly reflected in organisational KPIs across departments or articulated in job descriptions.

Implementation of adaptation actions can be expensive and contentious. The Hawke's Bay councils' experience with adaptation implementation illustrates the costs and complexities involved in proactively managing risks.<sup>20</sup> There is currently no central government or EQC funding for pre-emptive climate change risk reduction, and communities may not be willing or able to fund the costs of adaptation. Roles and responsibilities for

<sup>20</sup> <https://environment.govt.nz/publications/challenges-with-implementing-the-clifton-to-tangoio-coastal-hazards-strategy-2120-case-study/>

management and funding of adaptation responses between district and regional councils are also unclear, which impedes implementation.

### WHAT ARE THE CURRENT RESPONSES?

Councils are building the foundations for the necessary leadership, relationships, internal processes, knowledge base, capability and capacity, and required funding to plan and implement effective adaptation actions.

The Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee is a governance group comprising elected members from each council and equal tangata whenua representation from each council boundary (as distinct from hapū and iwi boundaries). This Committee has been established to provide governance oversight and consistency between Northland councils. It is supported by the joint staff group Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau, which has been collaborating since 2018 to develop shared approaches and resources to enable a consistent adaptation response. All Northland councils have recently committed funds to support adaptation planning activities, by creating new staff positions and/or allocating operational funding in their Long-Term Plans.

Priority action 2 is to embed Māori values in council processes. This involves co-design with iwi and hapū representatives of a decision-making framework for Northland councils based on Te Ao Māori concepts and values. It is hoped this framework will assist council staff to understand and consider mātauranga Māori when making decisions on projects, policies or plans that may impact on the cultural values of iwi and hapū. It is also proposed that the decision-making framework will support Māori and technical specialists to better understand council systems and processes in the context of decision-making. The framework must recognise that there are regional and local differences within Te Tai Tokerau that affect how local authorities operate.

The process of developing the framework is an opportunity to build better relationships between the councils and hau kainga, marae, hapū, iwi and Māori practitioners. The framework will be developed by engaging with those on the ground within Māori communities. Relationships built through this work could form the foundations for the community adaptation planning that the councils intend to start over the next 12 months, within priority action 1.

The councils have yet to review their policies to understand the gaps and conflicts between internal documents and adaptation needs. These reviews are in the planning stage at each council. A proposal for a regionally consistent climate change policy is in development.

Current council adaptation funding allows for a small number of community adaptation planning pilot projects to be delivered across the region in the next three years. Existing funds will also support a small number of iwi/hapū-led adaptation planning projects. Investigation into some priority issues, such as the impacts of climate change on biosecurity and biodiversity, are not yet funded.

There is poor understanding of, or planning for, the capital infrastructure funding required to reduce climate risks such as coastal hazards and flooding. There are already places where the current flood management infrastructure does not provide adequate protection for the required planning horizon. For example, some property owners in Ruawai are unable to obtain resource or building consents because they are located within a mapped hazard zone. This is causing widespread community concern. Central government is working on funding mechanisms for climate change adaptation, but the details and timeframes remain unclear. Many infrastructure costs will continue to be the responsibility of local government and communities for the foreseeable future.



## WHAT ARE SOME FUTURE ADAPTATION OPPORTUNITIES?

Our adaptation approach must be comprehensive and consistent. This requires coordination between the councils, and across council departments (e.g. civil defence, strategy, infrastructure, community engagement, RMA planning and consents teams). Such coordination requires leadership, dedicated staff, appropriate management structures and internal capacity-building. This should be supported by consistent internal strategies and policies. Many of the priority actions recommended in this strategy are designed to improve region-wide consistency.

Better processes to disclose climate risk, including the setting of KPIs and targets, will assist the councils to establish clear priorities for actions and risk reduction (priority action 40). A 'climate change maturity assessment' of policies will inform an improvement programme to support alignment and consistency within the councils. The development of an overarching regional policy framework will embed consideration of climate change impacts in council processes. Regular review and alignment with changes to central government legislation and guidance will be necessary. These issues are addressed in priority actions 38 and 39.

### Priority actions #38 and #39

#### 38 Joint climate change policy framework

- Aim:** Ensure consistent consideration of climate change issues across individual councils.
- Description:** Develop consistency between climate change policies that embed consideration of climate change impacts and adaptation responses in all council decision-making (which may also include council emissions reduction). This framework should define approaches and principles on data/information, definitions, reporting, standards and criteria.

#### 39 Policy review and improvement plan

- Aim:** Embed climate change objectives across individual council policies, strategies, plans and processes.
- Description:** 1) Identify improvement opportunities by undertaking a maturity assessment for each council of all relevant policies, strategies, plans and processes (may also include council emissions reduction), and 2) develop and deliver a climate change policy improvement plan that outlines a programme of policy updates to embed climate change objectives within a defined timeframe.

We will increase interaction with central government initiatives, such as input into the National Adaptation Plan or nationwide forums such as the Iwi Chairs Forum climate workstream. This will help us share resources and knowledge and improve alignment between national and regional/local scales. Ongoing advocacy and engagement to ensure Northland's voice is heard in the development of new government legislation or funding streams is essential. Where there are multiple agencies and organisations addressing adaptation issues (e.g.



drought response), better coordination between funding avenues and supporting agencies will make the process simpler and more efficient, with improved outcomes. This is addressed in priority actions 4–6 and 36.

#### Priority actions #4, #5, #6 & #36

##### 4 Advocacy

Aim: Promote Northland's voice in central government policy and legislation development.

Description: Targeted advocacy with central government, regarding the development of new funding mechanisms and legislation.

##### 5 Central government engagement

Aim: Ensure Northland has input into central government adaptation policy and legislation development.

Description: Prioritise engagement and advocacy with MfE on development of new legislation including RMA reform, the National Adaptation Plan and the Climate Change Adaptation Act.

##### 6 National partnerships

Aim: Develop partnerships and knowledge sharing with regional and sector groups.

Description: Contribute to collaborative projects and partnerships, and leverage existing knowledge from other regions and internationally.

##### 36 Water resilience funding coordination

Aim: Improve coordination between agencies/organisations to improve water resilience outcomes.

Description: Improve coordination between agencies to build collaborative, aligned water resilience responses including: tangata whenua, CDEM, district councils (Four Waters Advisory Group), and agencies (FENZ, MPI, TPK, DIA).

Reducing greenhouse gas emissions is not the focus of this strategy. However, the transition to a zero-carbon society is important to Northland communities. The risks associated with this transition may need to be considered at the same time as adaptation planning. This is an opportunity for the councils to develop models that integrate transition risks (associated with emissions reductions and the move to a zero-carbon economy) with climate risk assessments and planning, including at the community scale. This consideration is likely to influence a number of priority actions (e.g. 9, 10, 16, 23, 24 and 39). Further participation in national research initiatives will enhance the councils' abilities to address transition risks (priority action 24). Northland Regional Council is planning a regional multi-sector approach to support the transition to a zero-carbon economy in Northland.

Effective adaptation requires ongoing investment in staff resources, training, operational funding and implementation. We could establish and resource a climate change management structure, with identified teams and roles, to develop organisational resilience and capacity. We could also work with hapū or iwi to develop

partnership structures to support the emerging requirements of climate change adaptation. Priority actions 43, 44 and 46 address these matters.

#### Priority actions #43, #44 & #46

##### 43 Climate change teams

**Aim:** Establish appropriate portfolio, programme and project governance and management structures to build organisational capacities.

**Description:** Establish appropriate teams to deliver organisation-wide climate change implementation at each council, reporting to an appropriate level of management and given sufficient support.

##### 44 Staff resources

**Aim:** Ensure sufficient staff resourcing and capacity.

**Description:** Ensure sufficient staff resources are allocated to enable ongoing organisation-wide climate change response, including climate change focused roles and professional development and training.

##### 46 Inter-council collaboration

**Aim:** Continue to develop collaborative inter-council programmes and shared services.

**Description:** Continue to support and invest in the regional collaborative adaptation work programme, including establishing a process for sharing of resources between councils on specific projects, acknowledging the significant benefits and efficiencies of collaboration. Expand group to include Northland Transport Alliance.

Councils need to identify funding opportunities for the implementation of adaptation plans. These plans will be varied and may involve activities such as large infrastructure projects, nature-based solutions, changes to planning rules, property purchases, and increases in monitoring requirements. Potential funding options could include targeted rates, lease-back arrangements, low-interest loans, private-public partnerships, or alternative revenue streams. As the experience from Hawke's Bay shows, it is essential to define the adaptation management and funding responsibilities between the councils prior to implementation. Councils will need to identify existing funding streams and advocate for new, external sources, such as government grants and philanthropic trusts. Developing 'shovel-ready' infrastructure projects ahead of time allows the councils to take advantage of intermittent funding opportunities. Priority actions 4, 42 and 45 are relevant responses.

#### Priority actions #4, #42 & #45

##### 4 Advocacy

Aim: Promote Northland's voice in central government policy and legislation development.

Description: Targeted advocacy with central government, regarding the development of new funding mechanisms and legislation.

##### 42 Alignment of adaptation plans

Aim: Ensure community adaptation planning processes are aligned with council funding processes.

Description: Develop processes to ensure alignment of community adaptation plans with council plans and policies, including long-term plans, infrastructure strategies and financial plans.

##### 45 Adaptation funding

Aim: Identify and pursue adaptation funding avenues.

Description: Investigate and prioritise potential funding opportunities to enable the implementation of adaptation responses.

## 2. Impacts on Māori

Conversations about climate change between the councils and Māori are beginning to yield shared understanding and agreements. However, as the councils listen more closely to the voices of iwi and hapū, knowledge and insights about the real impacts of climate change from a Māori perspective will emerge. It is vital for the success of adaptation in Northland that the strategy evolves in an ongoing manner in response to insights from Māori.

### WHAT ARE THE KEY ISSUES?

Hapū report that the realms of ngā Atua are degraded, the mauri has been destroyed and there is potential for detrimental environmental, cultural and social effects.<sup>21</sup> Some contend that local government decision-making (based on Euro-centric perspectives) has contributed to this environmental degradation.<sup>22</sup> Environmental management practices have not required the restoration of mauri, which is necessary for survival and a key part of future adaptation responses.

<sup>21</sup> Iwi and Hapū Environmental Management Plans: Patuharakeke, Ngāti Wai, Ngāti Hine, Ngāti Hau, Ngāti Kuri (2018), Ngāti Rēhia (3<sup>rd</sup> ed, 2018) Whatitiri Resource Management Plan, Te Urioro Iwi Hapū Environmental Management Plan & Whatitiri Hapū Environmental Plan, 2016. Te Uri o Hau Settlement Trust Environs Holdings, Te Uri o Hau Kaitiakitanga o te Taiao, 2011.

<sup>22</sup> Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust Board, Patuharakeke Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2014. pg 21.  
Royal, Te Ahukaramu Charles (Ed), *The Woven Universe: Selected Writings of Rev. Maori Marsden*, 2003.  
Ngāti Hine, Ngā Tikanga mo te Taiao o Ngāti Hine: Ngāti Hine Iwi Environmental Management Plan, 2008.  
Chetham, J, Cooper J, Tautari R, *Tane Whakapiripiri: Lifting Nga Hapu o Whangarei Capacity to Engage with Local Government in Regard to Environmental Protection and Management*, 2019.

Iwi and hapū representatives say their ability to successfully adapt is intimately connected with how local government decision-making over current and future environmental management takes place, and whether Māori are partners in that decision making.<sup>23</sup> Currently, local government decision-making does not give sufficient voice to the specific needs of tangata whenua.<sup>24</sup> There is inequity in the information local government relies on, from whom the information is sought, the resourcing of data collection, and how the information is valued. If we do not address how local government makes decisions, council responses to climate change may limit the ability of tangata whenua to adapt to climate change. If the ability of tangata whenua to participate in decision making is limited there is increased risk of maladaptation; and a perpetuation of existing inequalities and breaches of Treaty obligations.

For some time, iwi and hapū representatives and kaimahi have highlighted the pressure on their capacity to participate within local government processes and operations,<sup>25</sup> although the aspiration and necessity remains. The need to be involved in climate change responses by local government adds further pressure. There is an opportunity to build relationships between the councils and Māori and to enable tangata whenua to take the lead on adaptation planning for Māori communities. The complex and sometimes strained relationship between Māori and the councils creates a playing field that is not equal between Māori and Pākehā. This work presents a real opportunity for Māori to participate in council decision-making processes.

For many Māori, climate change is not an isolated risk but one that is intrinsically connected to other issues such as social development needs, housing, environmental degradation, and poverty. We have heard from hapū that climate change poses an existential risk and may result in an inability to enjoy the customary use of their whenua. Climate impacts on ecosystems have implications for spiritual connection to taonga and to whakapapa, as well as for practical issues such as food security.

Some hapū say climate change could exacerbate inequalities already faced by Māori and is likely to have disproportionately large impacts on Māori cultural values and community wellbeing.<sup>26</sup> This is because many Māori communities are exposed to physical climate effects, both geographically and economically. As expressed by Ngāti Rēhia, “the economic future of Ngāti Rēhia is linked inextricably to our natural and heritage resources.”<sup>27</sup>

## Exposure

There are many factors which indicate high levels of exposure for Māori communities. Due to land confiscation, land remaining in Māori ownership often has some form of natural hazard limiting development potential and increasing risk. Many hapū have strong cultural and historic affiliations with coastal areas projected to be impacted by climate change. This means that flooding, coastal erosion, storm surge and regular tidal inundation may disproportionately affect Māori communities. There are likely to be impacts on cultural infrastructure such as marae and urupā, places for food gathering such as mahinga mataitai, and places of cultural significance such

<sup>23</sup> Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau Risk Assessment Workshops with Māori, Feb 2020.

<sup>24</sup> Chetham, J, Cooper J, Tautari R, *Tane Whakapiripiri: Lifting Ngā Hapū o Whangarei Capacity to Engage with Local Government in Regard to Environmental Protection and Management*, 2019.

Whatitiri Resource Management Plan, Te Uriroro Hapū Environmental Management Plan & Whatitiri Hapū Environmental Plan, 2016.

<sup>25</sup> Key issue raised in the Te Karearea Standing Committee of Whangarei District Council

Chetham, J, Cooper J, Tautari R, *Tane Whakapiripiri: Lifting Ngā Hapū o Whangarei Capacity to Engage with Local Government in Regard to Environmental Protection and Management*, 2019.

Thomas Hohaia and Delaraine Armstrong, Climate Adaptation Te Tai Tokerau meeting, 4 November 2021.

<sup>26</sup> Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust Board, Patuharakeke Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2014. pg 37.

<sup>27</sup> Ngāti Rēhia, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed, 2018

as wāhi tapu and archaeological sites.

Climate change will impact people's homes and incomes. Housing unaffordability and global pandemics contribute to greater numbers of whānau returning to their tūrangawaewae from other regions and nations, increasing the number of people exposed. Adaptive responses may be limited under current regulatory provisions because of natural hazard notations or high amenity notations, such as Significant Natural Areas, over land most suitable within their rohe for retreat.

Rural Māori are often not connected to reticulated secure and safe drinking water supplies and can be more susceptible to the effects of drought. Other less-visible effects may involve health impacts in rural areas; for example, an increase in mosquito-borne pathogens due to higher temperatures.

Indirect economic impacts may affect hapū and iwi. There may be changes to agricultural productivity. There is likely to be a loss of transport connectivity for settlements serviced by roads at risk of regular inundation due to sea level rise. In Whangaruru, for example, some school children are frequently unable to attend school because of flooding. The impacts this has on their education has been raised with elected members by local schools and by the children themselves.

### **Sensitivity and vulnerability**

Iwi and hapū in Te Tai Tokerau are vulnerable to climate change from a socio-economic and infrastructure services perspective. Across Tai Tokerau, Māori experience significant disparities in incomes and public services received. This disparity increases for Māori communities/whānau living in more geographically isolated places. Income disparity can reduce Māori communities' capacity to afford the costs of protecting against, avoiding, and recovering from droughts and extreme weather events. In terms of infrastructure vulnerability, services in outlying areas are more often affected by drought or weather events. For example, transport infrastructure in outlying areas tends to be more prone to flooding and slips.

Māori in Te Tai Tokerau are also largely employed in primary industries, a sector which is affected by weather extremes. Projected climate impacts such as extended droughts, fluvial flooding, salinisation of water tables, and tidal inundation of coastal land are likely to have direct impacts on the incomes of many whānau.

Risks related to the transition to a low-carbon economy are not often discussed alongside adaptation. However, emissions reduction policies have the potential to disproportionately affect Māori in Northland. Councils need to keep this in mind when working with Māori communities on adaptation planning, and should aim for the integration of adaptation, emissions reduction and carbon removal goals together.

Finally, climate change impacts are likely to threaten the taonga and natural systems that iwi and hapū whakapapa to. The inseparable links between Māori and the environment will mean that projected climate change impacts on natural systems, including on individual species, biodiversity, invasive pests and pathogens, ecosystem function, waterways, and coastal systems, will have cultural and personal impacts on Māori.

## WHAT ARE THE CURRENT RESPONSES?

For Māori, mātauranga was developed from the need to live sustainably and in harmony with the environment and seasons to avoid ‘severe and drastic consequences’.<sup>28</sup> Successful management was reliant on the strength of whānau and hapū to work together for the collective good. It was reliant on the relationships forged by whanaungatanga and kotahitanga. These are relevant starting points for discussions with Māori communities so they can draw on their kōrero tuku iho, or traditions, to guide their pathways planning.

Hapū and iwi aspire to reaffirm their mātauranga, tikanga and pūrākau – their own frameworks of reference – as they consider and plan for climate change.<sup>29</sup>

Hapū and iwi are well-known for intergenerational thinking when planning – looking to the guidance of their ancestors to plan for the wellbeing of their mokopuna and generations not yet born. This is reflected in how indigenous knowledge systems adapt to the changing world. Further to that, hapū and iwi environmental planning documents articulate the expectations that hapū and iwi have of local government responses to climate change.<sup>30</sup> These include:

- not increasing vulnerability and risk through council operations
- planning for and providing adequate infrastructure to cope with climate change (community-based, minimal-impact design solutions being preferred)
- ensuring communities are prepared for the negative impacts of climate change and doing effective adaptation planning, while being placed to take advantage of the opportunities
- recognising the impacts of climate change that will affect hapū and iwi, and incorporating that into strategic planning
- moving toward an integrated catchment-based management approach
- providing resourcing to enable hapū planning and responses
- incorporating mātauranga into local government strategies and plans.

Hapū and iwi are also taking action themselves. They use mechanisms such as iwi and hapū management plans to present policy positions and work with regional councils, crown research institutes, government departments, universities and other organisations to contribute to regional, national and international climate change policies and processes.

Northland councils want to listen to, and learn from, iwi and hapū to reach agreement on respectful and appropriate ways to be guided by Māori perspectives in adaptation responses, both at a strategic governance level and operationally. Hapū and iwi have indicated support for the collaborative adaptation approaches being developed. At the time of writing, a hapū-based kairangahau (researcher) is reviewing examples of successful adaptation engagement processes with Māori across the country. This work will add to the repository of information and tools that support hapū and iwi adaptation responses and assist the councils to engage with Māori communities in meaningful ways when planning.

---

<sup>28</sup> Ngāti Rēhia, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed, 2018

<sup>29</sup> Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust Board, Patuharakeke Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2014. pg 37.

<sup>30</sup> Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust Board, Patuharakeke Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2014. pg 39; Ngāti Hine Environmental Management Plan, 2008. Page 82; Ngāti Rēhia, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed, 2018; Te Aupōuri (DRAFT)(2018).

In section 2.1 – ‘Governance and management’ we refer to the development of a decision-making framework for local government that is based on Te Ao Māori, which addresses priority action 2. The intention is to build an understanding of cultural differences into council climate change adaptation processes. The framework will be accompanied by a suite of tools to support its implementation.

Relationships between the councils and iwi and hapū are at different stages of maturity. Influences include the quality of legacy relationships, multiple overlapping hapū and iwi interests where Treaty Settlement processes add complexity, and the quality of current relationships with staff and leadership.

### Priority actions #1 & #2

#### 1 Tangata whenua involvement

Aim: Ensure tangata whenua are appropriately involved in adaptation decision-making.

Description: Ensure inclusive processes for tangata whenua representation at all stages of adaptation decision-making, including providing appropriate resourcing, supporting training and developing targeted programmes.

#### 2 Embed Māori values in council processes

Aim: Ensure Māori values and worldviews are included in council processes and decision-making relating to climate change.

Description: Co-design with iwi and hapū representatives of a decision-making framework based on Te Ao Māori concepts and values. The framework will include implementation tools and will recognise that there are regional and local differences within Te Tai Tokerau that inform how local authorities operate.

The establishment of the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee is a significant step forward in collaborative co-governance, with equal numbers of elected and tangata whenua representatives from each council. Te Ao Māori decision-making frameworks draw on kōrero tuku iho and pūrākau to guide engagement with Māori communities. This work responds to priority actions 1 and 2 and should enable stronger foundations to undertake other priority actions, including 7–10 and 32–36.

Through whakapapa and whanaungatanga, the close social ties and cultural networks of Māori communities enable whole-of-community responses to build resilience, such as those shown during the Covid-19 response. In terms of kaitiakitanga, kotahitanga and whanaungatanga, some hapū see opportunities for collaboration within and between hapū for the collective good.<sup>31</sup> These values, and priority actions 9 and 10, will support Māori-led adaptation responses.

<sup>31</sup> Ngāti Rēhia, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed, 2018



## WHAT ARE SOME FUTURE ADAPTATION OPPORTUNITIES?

For Te Tai Tokerau councils to address the consequences of climate change, we must acknowledge issues specific to Māori. The stresses and hazards climate change bring are part of a changing array of challenges threatening Māori cultural integrity and continuity. Councils need to work alongside Māori to develop a response to climate change that respects the diverse needs and aspirations of Māori. This might be through establishing inclusive structures and processes to enable co-design of adaptation planning programmes, as well as supporting Māori communities to develop their own responses. We understand that for some Māori communities, there is anticipation and openness toward the opportunities that climate change might present, as their histories tell examples of their tupuna successfully adapting to and using change for their betterment.<sup>32</sup>

### Priority actions #9 & #10

#### 9 Māori adaptation impact assessment

**Aim:** Improve bi-cultural understanding of climate risks and consequences.

**Description:** Work with tangata whenua to undertake iwi- and hapū-focused risk assessments, including communicating risks from Te Ao Māori perspectives, identifying risks associated with climate hazards, impacts of adaptation responses and limits to Māori adaptive capacity. This may include direct impacts on cultural values such as wāhi tapu; as well as compounding risks, such as interactions between councils and government legislation resulting in unintended consequences, or barriers for Māori adaptation responses.

#### 10 Iwi/hapū-focused adaptation

**Aim:** Enable iwi/hapū-led adaptation planning at appropriate scales.

**Description:** Work with tangata whenua to develop a programme to facilitate hapū or iwi-led holistic climate change adaptation plans to integrate multiple climate risks as well as other community objectives. Draw on approaches to adaptation engagement with Māori that have been successful in the past. This may include provisions to support iwi/hapū with risk assessments and technical analysis as well as enabling data sovereignty.

Locally appropriate risk assessments underpinned by tikanga Māori will enable Māori perspectives on change, risks, vulnerabilities and consequences to be incorporated into adaptation decisions. Councils also need to acknowledge the role of planning rules and connecting infrastructure (e.g. roads and water networks) to enable successful adaptation for Māori communities. These are outside the control of iwi and hapū. Better involvement of Māori in infrastructure planning would help to bridge this gap.

At different stages of developing this strategy, hapū and iwi reiterated the need for tools to consider climate risks and impacts on resources, papakāinga, and marae under threat. They want to be able to develop appropriate responses that navigate a changing legislative environment. As part of the wider programme of adaptation, we

<sup>32</sup> Ngāti Hine Environmental Management Plan, 2008. Page 81. Patuharakeke Hapū Environmental Management Plan, 2014. Page 37.



should develop a toolkit and resources to enable hapū-led adaptation at the local scale. This will help communicate climate risk in meaningful ways to Māori communities. Councils can work with local knowledge-holders to combine Western science and risk analysis with indigenous knowledge, and apply this in appropriate planning contexts. There is opportunity to support iwi and hapū to develop their own adaptation plans with tools, hazards advice and other support, while ensuring data sovereignty. Councils could support the development of these tools and their application in priority actions 9 and 10.

The inability to fund implementation of adaptation plans or other adaptation responses is an ongoing issue. The impact of this is exacerbated in small rural Māori communities, which may be unable or unwilling to pay for the costs of the long-term measures required to protect community values exposed to climate hazards. Advocacy and engagement with central government is essential to secure funding for equitable and proactive adaptation measures. Addressing the inability of smaller Māori communities to finance adaptation measures is essential, and alternative approaches such as philanthropic or international funding may be an option.

---

### 3. Coastal communities

#### WHAT ARE THE KEY ISSUES?

Northland has a coastline of over 3,200km. Many towns, settlements and cultural sites are located on the coastal fringe.

Sea level rise is projected to result in ongoing permanent loss of land, through coastal erosion and tidal inundation. It will also increase the frequency and severity of periodic storm surge events.

An initial coastal hazard risk screening study identified about 70 towns and localities where properties and assets are projected to be significantly affected by coastal flooding, erosion, and permanent inundation due to sea level rise. Both Māori and non-Māori coastal communities will be highly impacted. Many Māori communities, particularly in the Far North, occupy land nearby or on coastal floodplains, with several Marae projected to be directly impacted by coastal hazards. Farming communities will be highly impacted as a significant amount of agricultural and horticultural land is in low-lying, coastal flood areas. There are also rural areas under pressure from development within coastal hazard zones.

Council infrastructure such as roads, water supply, stormwater and wastewater networks, and coastal stopbanks, will be impacted by sea level rise. In many places the road network is located on estuarine fringes, such as in the Hokianga. Road connectivity will be increasingly impacted by inundation at high tide. The location of large council infrastructure, such as wastewater treatment plants, within the coastal environment will be increasingly impacted by rising groundwater levels. This will impact on the effectiveness of land disposal systems.

Coastal protection infrastructure operated by the councils, such as sea walls, will become increasingly difficult and expensive to maintain. In some places, sea walls and stopbank systems have been funded privately or directly by communities, and the increasing cost to maintain and/or upgrade them is becoming unaffordable. Higher tidal boundaries mean that the impact of river flooding is exacerbated, resulting in more days where roads are impassable. This impact is already being experienced in places like Punuruku and Panguru.

Most coastal communities do not have town water supplies, with households relying on tanks and shallow bores. Both of these sources of water will come under pressure with climate change due to increased drought and sea level rise. These communities are also often reliant on septic systems. Rising groundwater levels could impact on the effectiveness of waste disposal systems. Sea level rise will impact coastal agricultural areas as groundwater salinity impacts the ability to draw water for stock or irrigation, and low-lying land is affected by salinity.



**Tasman Heights, Ahipara**

## WHAT ARE THE CURRENT RESPONSES?

There is a comprehensive programme of mapping coastal inundation and completing erosion hazard assessments across the region. These are being used to develop climate risk assessments and plan adaptation programmes. Councils are working together to develop an aligned region-wide programme, working with communities to develop local adaptation plans in at-risk areas (see 'Coastal adaptation programme' in the box below).

### **Coastal adaptation programme (see priority actions 29 and 30)**

Northland councils are developing a work programme to address climate change risks to coastal communities. The programme will set out guidance on ways councils, communities, tangata whenua and key stakeholders can co-develop community adaptation plans.

The preferred, best-practice engagement and decision-making approach to be used in the coastal adaptation programme is adaptive pathways planning, which is described in the 2017 Ministry for the Environment document 'Coastal hazards and climate change guidance for local government'. This process enables communities to be intimately involved in developing adaptation plans for their own communities through a structured process. It uses community panels to collaboratively determine adaptive pathways using risk assessments, engineering designs, options assessments, and prioritisation processes.

The result will be a flexible, long-term adaptation plan for each community, signed off by a governance body and the relevant councils. While this approach will be appropriate for larger communities, we will also work with smaller communities to develop and implement community-led adaptation plans at the local or hapū scale. Funding for pilot community engagement projects has been allocated in the 2021–31 Long-Term Plans for all Northland councils.

Following the endorsement of community adaptive pathways plans, councils will be responsible for monitoring environmental indicators and delivering actions when specific trigger points are reached, such as changing land-use zoning or delivering new infrastructure. To ensure the plans are consistent with other organisational activities, councils will also need to embed community adaptive pathways

Current responses to coastal erosion and inundation by councils are guided by the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010, which states a preference for nature-based solutions. Private landowners are responsible for building and maintaining coastal protection for their individual properties, which can give rise to a patchwork of consented and unconsented coastal management approaches. Sea walls are generally only constructed by councils where infrastructure is at risk from coastal erosion, although there are situations where councils have constructed coastal protection on behalf of private landowners. Beach nourishment has been undertaken at a small number of sites, including recent work at Matapouri. Nature-based solutions, such as the Northland Regional Council's CoastCare coastal restoration programme, can help reduce the immediate risk of coastal erosion while providing additional biodiversity benefits.

## WHAT ARE SOME FUTURE ADAPTATION OPPORTUNITIES?

There is an opportunity to develop an integrated approach to coastal management to ensure the long-term success of coastal adaptation responses. If we improve knowledge of coastal hazards and processes, particularly in complex systems like estuaries and agricultural drainage areas, we will improve our ability to understand and plan for future coastal impacts.

Working with coastal communities to plan how to reduce the risks posed by climate change is an emerging role for local government. The ways the councils work with communities, tangata whenua and key stakeholders to develop community adaptation plans will evolve. Community coastal adaptation plans are flexible plans that outline short-, medium-, and long-term actions and transitional pathways for the coastal community area. An adaptive pathways approach, similar to the 'dynamic adaptive policy pathways' (DAPP) process suggested in government guidance<sup>33</sup>, is our preferred engagement, decision-making and planning approach. The programme of region-wide coastal adaptation planning is included in priority actions 29 and 30.

### Priority actions #29 & #30

#### 29 Coastal adaptation programme

**Aim:** Develop a programme of coastal adaptation planning projects aligned with community needs.

**Description:** Develop a region-wide coastal adaptation programme, identifying key locations, timeframes and engagement methodologies, using recommended considerations in *Coastal Community Profiles* and *Adaptation Engagement Framework* reports.

#### 30 Coastal adaptation planning projects

**Aim:** Enable flexible, planned adaptation responses to coastal hazards by co-developing adaptation plans with communities.

**Description:** Deliver projects in the coastal adaptation programme. Undertake community pre-engagement to confirm site selection and appropriate engagement methodology. Work alongside communities to understand, plan and implement adaptation responses by co-developing community adaptation plans in at-risk areas, following the recommendations in *Coastal Community Profiles* and *Adaptation Engagement Framework* reports.

The resulting community adaptation plans will need to integrate with council processes and the regulatory environment. Implementation of these plans may challenge existing council processes. Councils will need to assess integration issues when the adaptation actions are identified, and the preferred pathways are decided. For example, some adaptation actions may require rules and policies to enable land-use planning changes or to provide for or change infrastructure. Where climate change risks require changes to operational council activities (such as infrastructure plans or environmental management programmes) the implementation of adaptation

<sup>33</sup> Ministry for the Environment (2017) <https://environment.govt.nz/publications/coastal-hazards-and-climate-change-guidance-for-local-government/>

plans will need to be embedded in each council's Long-Term Plan funding models, financial and infrastructure strategies, and work programmes.

## 4. Water availability

### WHAT ARE THE KEY ISSUES?

Climate projections indicate that periods of low rainfall combined with high temperatures and evapotranspiration rates<sup>34</sup> are likely to result in droughts of increasing regularity and severity in Northland. Reductions in spring and winter rain are also likely to impact communities and the primary sector.

Fifty per cent of Northlanders are not connected to a municipal water supply (in the Kaipara this is closer to 70%, and in the Far North this is around 65%). Many homes and marae also have outdated or poorly functioning water collection, storage, and treatment facilities. Some council water supply networks are vulnerable to extended dry periods, especially those that rely on run-of-river sources or shallow bores. Climate change-related reductions in the reliability of summer rainfall will impact the already limited water resilience of affected properties. Increased volumes of rain falling during high-intensity weather events will also make it more difficult to catch and store water offline, as a larger holding capacity will be required. Heavy rainfall can create sedimentation and erosion issues, impacting on the quality for both rural and town water supplies.

Surface water and groundwater extraction is already highly- or over-allocated in several catchments, with little head room for increased water takes by the primary sector or by industry. Competing interests for water, such as new horticulture, alongside new minimum environmental flow requirements and allocation limits, mean that opportunities to extract freshwater from natural systems for use by the primary sector and by industry will become increasingly limited. Some groundwater supplies, such as the Aupōuri aquifer, are now supplying large quantities of bore water for horticulture crops – the science to support allocation of water from such sources can be very complex and this is compounded by the uncertainty around future effects of climate change.

In many coastal communities water is supplied via rainwater tanks with back-up bores which are reliant on shallow aquifers over summer. The impact of over-extraction during dry periods already creates significant salinity issues in shallow bores. With drier conditions and increased demand, water availability limits are likely to be reached more often. This effect also applies in places where irrigation is affected by groundwater salinity.

### WHAT ARE THE CURRENT RESPONSES?

Water flow monitoring is conducted across the region as part of resource consent and state of the environment monitoring. Drought forecasting models have been developed to help predict drought in the near-term. As an emergency response, civil defence teams may provide backup water supplies in the event of droughts. Iwi and hapū networks have provided essential services by supplying emergency water to outlying communities.

District councils are responsible for the provision of drinking water to communities. Town water supplies have varying levels of reliability under drought conditions. Some supplies, such as Whangārei, have large storage facilities, dedicated catchments and plans in place for alternative supply options. However, other town supplies which rely on river takes or bores experience water shortages more regularly under drought conditions. While

---

<sup>34</sup> Evapotranspiration is the process where water held in the soil is gradually released to the atmosphere through a combination of direct evaporation and transpiration from plants (NIWA, <https://niwa.co.nz/climate/information-and-resources/drought/charts>).



the Three Waters Reform process will significantly change the management arrangements for water supply (and wastewater), the risk of prolonged drought conditions under climate change scenarios is unresolved.

Building long-term water resilience for communities outside areas with council water supplies has been largely uncoordinated. Numerous government agencies provide funding assistance, including the Ministry of Business Innovation and Employment (MBIE), the Ministry for Primary Industries (MPI) and the Department of Internal Affairs (DIA), as well as philanthropic trusts. Many of these agencies assist with funding for improved water collection, storage and treatment facilities at the household or marae scale. Northland Regional Council has allocated funding to help improve water resilience at the household level by funding improvements to private water collection, storage and treatment. More must be done. A government-funded programme is also operating that will see the construction of at least two large reservoirs to enable irrigation for horticultural use.

#### WHAT ARE SOME FUTURE ADAPTATION OPPORTUNITIES?

There is an opportunity to support early drought responses and long-term water resilience by providing better information, and through the use of models such as drought forecasting. We could include research on the interaction between population growth, water extraction demand, groundwater recharge, and sea level rise to improve understanding of water availability in coastal townships and agricultural regions. Ongoing investments in infrastructure to improve the reliability of town water supplies will be necessary to mitigate drought risk. In addition, demand reduction measures, including community education, are likely to be required.



Drought, Takou Bay area

It is a priority to assist rural communities and marae to establish water resilient infrastructure. Existing efforts to enable appropriate and equitable water supply solutions will be more effective with better coordination of multiple funding sources. These actions relate to priority actions 23, 35 and 36.

#### Priority actions #23, #35 & #36

##### 23 Community drought adaptation opportunities

- Aim:** 1) Improve understanding of the impacts of drought on rural and community water supplies, and 2) identify opportunities to support community adaptation to drought.
- Description:** Collate data on drought vulnerability, and develop community vulnerability assessments. (N.B. The responsibility for this item may be impacted by the Three Waters Reform process.) Investigate priority hapū and community needs and existing adaptation/water resilience programmes/actions; and clarify opportunities for the Councils to add value in facilitating adaptation planning.

##### 35 Water tank assistance

- Aim:** Improve community water resilience through water tank programmes.
- Description:** Provide assistance to communities to install water collection, storage and treatment with a focus on community resilience, e.g. NRC's water tank programme.

##### 36 Water resilience funding coordination

- Aim:** Improve coordination between agencies/organisations to improve water resilience outcomes.
- Description:** Improve coordination between agencies to build collaborative, aligned water resilience responses including: tangata whenua, CDEM, District Councils (Four Waters Advisory Group), and agencies (FENZ, MPI, TPK, DIA).

Councils may be able to assist primary producers through water supply. Potentially, they can support research and provide advice on alternative, drought-resilient crops and livestock, and on incorporating alternative irrigation designs and additional supportive land-use practices. This support could involve targeted engagement and seeking external funding with farming communities and primary industries stakeholders to identify opportunities. Kaipara District Council's Kaipara Kai and Kaipara Water projects (resourced by MBIE's Provincial Growth Fund) are examples of these opportunities in action.

If rural fires become more commonplace, it is likely that increased volumes of dedicated firefighting water storage will be needed on rural properties.

## 5. Natural hazards

### WHAT ARE THE KEY ISSUES?

Flooding due to heavy rain is one of the region's most commonly experienced natural disasters. Climate change projections indicate that heavy rain events are likely to become more frequent and intense, potentially resulting in increased damage to homes, properties and livelihoods. Flood management infrastructure is largely managed by the councils, including urban stormwater systems, river flood protection works such as stopbanks and spillways, and agricultural flood management schemes. All of these services will be impacted by increases in heavy rainfall events, effectively reducing the levels of service provided, and requiring further investment in risk management responses.

Sea level rise will also exacerbate river flooding in coastal communities, and future coastal protection works may create drainage problems behind coastal structures. Other hazards that may be influenced by climate change, that we have very little information for, include extreme windstorms and tornados, geotechnical stability and slips, and wildfire.

Landslides and slips regularly have major impacts on regional transport routes, with a number of key state highways cut due to slips in recent years (e.g. Mangamuka Gorge and Kawakawa). Projected higher intensity rainfall is likely to result in higher likelihoods of geotechnical failures, as were seen following the July 2020 floods across Northland.

While few serious wildfires have impacted Northland in recent years, future climate projections show an increased likelihood of fire weather due to the combination of prolonged drought, extended high temperatures and heatwaves, high pressure systems and strong winds. Northland's exposure to risk from wildfires may be increasing due to the expansion in fire-prone land-uses such as exotic forestry, alongside urban expansion into at-risk areas.

### WHAT ARE THE CURRENT RESPONSES?

Flood risk has been modelled and mapped across the entire region using new LiDAR data. This can be used to understand risk, help prioritise work programmes, and inform land-use planning rules. Local flood models are being developed to inform stormwater planning and long-term adaptation infrastructure, such as the Whangārei Blue/Green Network Strategy. Flood warnings are informed by river monitoring data and flood models, with emergency responses coordinated by civil defence teams.

The district councils manage urban and road flooding through the provision of stormwater infrastructure. When planning and designing new or replacement infrastructure, design specifications need to factor in the climate change projections for rainfall and sea level rise. However, additional solutions to address shortfalls in existing infrastructure will be required if climate projections are realised.

A large flood management programme will increase flood protection for priority at-risk townships including Kaitiāia, Ōtiria/Moerewa, Kawakawa, Kāeo and Whangārei. The programme involves community consultation,



and the planning, designing, and construction of river management structures such as stopbanks, flood walls and spillways.

#### Priority actions #18 & #19

##### 18 River flood risk assessment

**Aim:** Improve understanding of river flood risk under climate change and plan future river flood management programmes.

**Description:** Undertake risk assessments for communities exposed to flooding using region-wide flood model projections, and use this information to prioritise future flood management programmes. Ensure all river flood models include consistent climate change factors, including rainfall intensity and sea level rise.

##### 19 Coastal hazards

**Aim:** Improve understanding of coastal hazards under climate change scenarios.

**Description:** Continue to improve coastal hazards assessments, including methods for understanding impacts, considering the combination of river and coastal flooding, sea level rise and ex-tropical cyclones, and coastal erosion.

The Northland Transport Alliance is working on a transport resilience project to identify key sections of the roading network at risk from slips and landslides. This will inform forward work programmes to reduce risk at sites across the region.

#### WHAT ARE SOME FUTURE ADAPTATION OPPORTUNITIES?

Using risk assessments to better understand flood risk to communities across the region will help the councils to plan future work programmes for river flood management. We also need to better understand the interaction of river and coastal flooding in estuaries to anticipate the potential impacts of ex-tropical cyclones (priority actions 18 and 19).

There are opportunities to reduce exposure to flood risk by adopting different approaches, such as ‘making room for the river’ and ensuring floodplains are free from inappropriate urban development. In some areas, investment in river management infrastructure will be required to reduce flood risk to existing communities (priority action 33). For large urban areas such as Whangārei, a multi-hazard, strategic approach will be required to address coastal inundation and river flooding concurrently. This might be achieved by working together to implement the Blue-Green Network Strategy (see priority action 34).

### Priority actions #33 & #34

#### 33 River flood management

Aim: Reduce flooding risk to communities through river management.

Description: Continue to deliver prioritised river flood management projects, and plan and secure funding for future flood management implementation across the region.

#### 34 Coordinated flood risk management

Aim: Improve coordination between the District and Regional Councils in pluvial and fluvial flood management.

Description: Work together to promote projects with multiple partners and co-benefits (e.g. the Blue-Green Network involving WDC and NRC).

We can improve our ability to reduce risks and improve community resilience by building a more comprehensive database of hazards (e.g. landslides and wildfires) under climate change scenarios (priority actions 20 and 21). We can use downscaled national models (such as the Crown Research Institute Scion's assessment of wildfire risk under climate change scenarios) to enable more detailed assessment of potential exposure and key sites of concern. This can support setting of informed policy (e.g. vegetation setbacks, fire-fighting access, and water storage on properties) alongside emergency preparedness and planning with Fire and Emergency New Zealand. Close work with civil defence teams can also help bridge the gap between forward adaptation planning and hazard event responses (priority action 31).



We will work with Fire and Emergency New Zealand to manage increased wildfire risk.

### Priority actions #20, #21 & #31

#### 20 Land hazard data

Aim: Improve understanding of land hazards under climate change scenarios.

Description: Collate existing information on geotechnical instability and slips in a common spatial database; and look for research partnerships (e.g. GNS, Waka Kotahi, NTA) to further develop information and data.

#### 21 Wildfire hazard data

Aim: Improve understanding of wildfire risk under climate change scenarios.

Description: Collate information on projected fire hazards and at-risk landscape information into a common spatial database; and look for research partnerships (e.g. FENZ, Scion) to further develop information and data.

#### 31 Civil defence

Aim: Integrate civil defence and community adaptation planning objectives.

Description: Ensure alignment of civil defence response plans, climate risk assessments and adaptation planning.

## 6. Ecosystems and biosecurity

### WHAT ARE THE KEY ISSUES?

It is expected that a shift towards a more extreme, hotter climate will bring profound and lasting changes to the ecological composition and character of Northland's natural environment. Northland's indigenous ecosystems have not evolved to cope with projected environmental changes such as extreme heat, drought, and wildfire. The resulting impacts on endemic temperature-sensitive species, such as altitude-limited plants and animals, may result in localised extinctions in the absence of human intervention. The rate of change also means species have limited ability to adapt, migrate or evolve response mechanisms.

Past environmental degradation worsens the impacts of these changes. The resilience and mauri of the indigenous ecosystems has deteriorated for generations due to wetland and swamp drainage, deforestation and vegetation clearance, intensifying coastal development and invasive species damage.

In 2020, the Department of Conservation released a five-year Climate Change Adaptation Action Plan<sup>35</sup>, alongside a supporting science plan<sup>36</sup>. The science plan notes the paucity of data to assist understanding and

<sup>35</sup> <https://www.doc.govt.nz/our-work/climate-change-and-conservation/adapting-to-climate-change/>

<sup>36</sup> <https://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/our-work/climate-change/climate-change-adaptation-science-plan.pdf>

planning for climate impacts on natural heritage: “There are significant gaps in knowledge that limit our ability to both adapt our management and understand how climate change will affect the resources we manage. This is both in terms of current state, but also future risk. Amongst other effects, this includes how climate change will alter native species distributions, timing of phenology, prevalence and distribution of animal and plant pests...”.

Specific impacts of climate change on ecosystems in Northland are not well documented in the scientific literature. The resulting scientific uncertainty makes it difficult to prioritise adaptation responses such as monitoring, pest control and conservation interventions, given the burden of existing biosecurity and conservation threats and the limited resources available. While there is an urgent need to protect and restore remaining habitat, there is a corresponding need to be aware of future threats. We must prioritise our efforts to ensure future risks are managed alongside current issues.

Other relevant policies and plans addressing the impacts of climate change on ecosystems and biodiversity include the upcoming National Policy Statement on Indigenous Biodiversity, and the New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy Te Mana o te Taiao (2020)<sup>37</sup>. The latter includes actions to ensure that potential impacts from climate change have been integrated into ecosystem and species management plans and strategies. It also calls for improved understanding of the potential for carbon storage from the restoration of indigenous ecosystems. While the Department of Conservation (DoC) has a central role to play, regional councils will have an important function to implement and monitor actions, particularly for ecosystems that fall outside the national conservation estate. Northland councils will also need to improve understanding and set strategic direction around support for ecosystem restoration under their respective emissions mitigation and carbon sequestration targets and work programmes.

### Biosecurity

Being at the northern tip of an island nation means many species of indigenous flora and fauna are likely to migrate southwards to cooler climates, leaving voids that may be filled by exotic invasive species. These pests are likely to expand via new overseas introductions and the expansion of existing ranges. Impacts may include terrestrial (e.g. heat- and drought-tolerant invasive plants, insects and other animals, and pathogens), aquatic (e.g. aquatic weeds, parasites of native fish) and coastal/marine ecosystems (e.g. invasive crustacea and smothering algae). Climate-induced reduction in species resilience may also see a rise in the impacts of plant and animal pathogens, parasites, and insect infestations.

### Coastal

Northland's coastal ecosystems are unique in the country. They are sensitive to climate impacts such as atmospheric and marine heatwaves, disturbance events from coastal storms and rising sea levels. Intertidal species have been shown to suffer high mortality in heatwaves, such as the massive shellfish die-offs seen in recent summers. These events are projected to increase in frequency. Marine heatwaves are likely to have significant impacts on near-shore habitats such as coral reefs and macroalgal communities.

Open coast areas are likely to suffer increased storm damage. This is already an issue for vulnerable ground-nesting birds such as fairy terns. Northland also hosts important migratory bird nesting sites including the sandy Eastern beaches and numerous estuarine and harbour environments, including the Kaipara and Rangaunu harbours. These coastal floodplains are likely to see a gradual change in vegetation and ecology due to sea level

---

<sup>37</sup> [doc.govt.nz/nature/biodiversity/aotearoa-new-zealand-biodiversity-strategy/](https://doc.govt.nz/nature/biodiversity/aotearoa-new-zealand-biodiversity-strategy/)

rise, affecting available habitat for birds such as the Australasian bittern. Higher rates of sedimentation due to higher intensity rain events will impact estuarine and near-coast habitats, as well as freshwater systems.

Coastal squeeze is a real issue for Northland's coastal habitats. In many cases the need for ecological communities to migrate landward due to sea level rise may be restricted by existing land uses and coastal stopbanks. It is likely that the construction of new coastal protection structures and floodgates will further prevent re-establishment of coastal ecosystems such as mangroves, saltmarsh and tidal habitats, including inanga spawning sites on private land. Many of these ecosystems play critical roles as habitats and are important carbon sinks.

### Freshwater

Northland freshwater ecosystems are extremely sensitive to climate change, given the current state of water quality and ecological health. Freshwater and riparian habitats are already extensively degraded, with water extraction during dry periods, eutrophication, high summer temperatures and high sediment loads currently affecting ecological communities. These impacts are expected to worsen given projected increases in mean temperatures, the frequency of heatwaves, and extended dry periods. Stratification<sup>38</sup> of water bodies can lead to extreme oxygen cycles, which can lead to ecological shifts from macrophyte to cyanobacterial/algal dominated communities. This is made worse by eutrophication caused by runoff from surrounding land use, impacting a wider range of ecological communities. More high intensity rainfall events could also worsen the impacts of sedimentation, which is already one of the region's most serious water quality issues.

Wetland habitats in Northland are adapted to periodic dry conditions. However, the increasing frequency and severity of drought is likely to place additional pressures on species which require permanent moisture. Wetland habitats are currently restricted by existing pressures from grazing and land conversion. This reduces resilience to weather events. Northland's diverse dune lakes are also threatened, and many of these host rare species which are especially vulnerable to changes in temperature and rainfall patterns.

### Forests

New climatic conditions are likely to have significant impacts on forest ecosystems, including taonga species like kauri. The impacts of drought have been documented to affect kiwi food foraging and kauri snail mortality. However, measures to improve the resilience of native forests through control of browsing pests are reported to reduce the impact of drought on vegetation. This results in better food access for kiwi than in forests with higher pest loads.

The southwards migration of many indigenous forest species due to gradual mean temperature rise is likely to occur. This will lead to changes in ecosystem dynamics and open the way for a shift in ecological composition, favouring exotic and invasive species. Vegetation communities limited to higher altitudes may face localised extinction due to the limited availability of cool mountain climates to migrate toward.

---

<sup>38</sup> When water bodies, such as lakes, 'divide' into different layers of density due to differing temperatures.

Disturbance events through wildfire and severe windstorms may accelerate the shift in forest community composition, with fast-growing warm-adapted exotic species potentially dominating. An increase in extended dry periods and wildfires is also likely to impact the distribution of species and may ultimately affect the composition of vegetation communities.

**Creating resilient Kiwi habitat through pest control**

A Whangārei Heads biosecurity programme helped create a positive outcome for its resident kiwis. During the 2020 drought, when many kiwi populations elsewhere in Northland were suffering due to poor foraging conditions, kiwi in a Whangārei Heads reserve showed improved foraging and access to water. This shows that improving the resilience of our forests through pest control will provide direct, positive benefits for native fauna.

**WHAT ARE THE CURRENT RESPONSES?**

Councils already face huge challenges managing and monitoring existing pressures on ecosystems. There is a need to provide better resourcing to investigate, plan for, and deliver programmes to address climate impacts on the environment.

While climate change risks to the natural environment are acknowledged as being regionally significant, little is known of the detailed impacts on specific habitats and ecosystems. This knowledge gap means we do not have pre-emptive monitoring programmes in place to assess ongoing changes due to climate impacts. Nonetheless, existing environmental monitoring programmes such as state of the environment reporting, targeted monitoring of water quality, flow regimes in rivers and aquifers, and assessments of wetlands and coastal habitats all provide important data to assess long-term trends.

Northland has a well-established biosecurity programme that monitors and responds to ongoing threats. However, little is known of potential biosecurity risks under future climate change scenarios for terrestrial, freshwater or marine environments. In some open ecosystems such as marine environments, border controls are difficult or impossible to impose, making monitoring and control challenging.

Existing regional and district planning aims to reduce further environmental degradation and ensure the gradual restoration of natural values. However, the current planning structure does not effectively address the threats to natural values due to climate change.

## WHAT ARE SOME FUTURE ADAPTATION OPPORTUNITIES?

Investigations and research will improve the baseline understanding of climate change risks to the natural environment and ecosystems. This will reduce uncertainty and assist the councils in prioritising at-risk species and developing intervention plans. Possible investigations include the identification of potential biosecurity threats, hotspots and key indicator species. This would enable the development of targeted monitoring and early interventions (priority action 16). Investigations are required to identify at-risk species and ecosystems to help develop monitoring and response plans across a wide range of ecosystems (priority action 17). Modelling of potential impacts on the ecological parameters of at-risk species is needed to understand which species are likely to face increasing threats due to climate change. This would enable the councils to build ecological resilience and protect and establish refuge locations which will be critical to threatened species. In extreme cases in the future, it may be necessary to translocate species and establish genetically viable populations in southern locations.

### Priority actions #16 & #17

#### 16 Biosecurity risk assessment

**Aim:** Improve understanding of climate change-driven biosecurity threats and develop monitoring and response programmes.

**Description:** Undertake preliminary high-level investigations into future biosecurity threats (both sleeper and offshore), aligned with national research programmes and information from agencies (e.g. MPI and MoH). The scope may include: human pathogens, primary industry pests and pathogens (agriculture, horticulture and aquaculture) and environmental pests (freshwater, terrestrial and marine). Develop prioritised monitoring and response programmes for relevant target species.

#### 17 Ecosystem and biodiversity risk assessment

**Aim:** Improve understanding of climate change impacts on biodiversity and ecosystem function and develop monitoring and response programmes.

**Description:** Undertake preliminary high-level investigations identifying major at-risk species and ecosystems, followed by targeted research into key ecosystems. Develop monitoring and response plans for key species, habitats and ecosystems, including wetland/peat, terrestrial, marine, freshwater, lakes, coastal dunes, and foreshore and estuarine ecosystems.

Increased use of nature-based solutions to address coastal erosion is an example in which ecological and aesthetic co-benefits can occur while achieving short and medium-term hazard mitigation. The existing Northland Regional Council CoastCare programme supports communities to undertake dune restoration in places subject to coastal erosion, while protecting the nesting habitat of migratory birds. Alignment of these projects with adaptation plans using recent coastal erosion data would help improve adaptation outcomes (priority action 32).



Better understanding of potential species migration requirements would assist planning of landscape-scale management such as establishing habitat corridors. Improved use of spatial planning tools may assist with the development of planning rules to build the resilience of natural systems; for example, land-use rules to maintain viable populations of saltmarsh habitat where this is threatened by coastal squeeze (see priority action 26).

#### Priority actions #26 & #32

##### 26 Spatial planning

**Aim:** Embed climate change risks and adaptation planning into strategic spatial plans.

**Description:** Undertake region-wide spatial planning to highlight risks and opportunities for strategic land-use planning that enables adaptation responses and enhances wellbeing. (N.B. RMA reforms will impact this item and review may be required.)

##### 32 Nature-based solutions

**Aim:** Promote nature-based solutions as interim hazard-reduction options for coastal impacts.

**Description:** Continue to support community dune restoration and enhancement projects such as the Coast Care programme in line with regional adaptation planning, and as alternative interim measures in place of hard protection structures.

The carbon-storage function of coastal blue carbon ecosystems (mangroves, saltmarsh and seagrass) also needs to be considered, with the potential for habitat expansion and restoration to be funded through carbon credits (Northland Regional Council has an action to investigate this in its climate change strategy).

Northland councils can develop clear policy on how to account for the carbon-storage and offset potential of ecosystem restoration activities to guide decision-making and encourage nature-based solutions. Where coastal stopbanks impede the landward migration of coastal habitat, infrastructure adaptation planning should consider habitat and carbon storage values in options assessments.



## 7. Public infrastructure

### WHAT ARE THE KEY ISSUES?

Public infrastructure managed by the councils provides many of the basic functions that enable our communities to function. It includes a wide range of built assets such as: stormwater, wastewater and water supply (e.g. reticulation, storage, pump stations, treatment plants, devices and ponds); roads, culverts and bridges; flood management schemes and assets; agricultural drainage schemes; and coastal management structures. Other associated 'natural assets' include open drains, waterways, buffering, receiving environments and protective reserves. Non-council-owned infrastructure such as electricity distribution and supply networks form an essential part of the supply chain for some council assets such as pump stations and wastewater treatment plants.

Significant climate change hazards and stressors which are likely to impact infrastructure include: increased rainfall intensity, higher temperatures/heatwaves, permanent tidal inundation and groundwater salinity due to sea level rise, coastal erosion, coastal flooding, severe windstorms, and increased drought frequency and severity. Impacts can also compound across hazards and infrastructure types, creating further unexpected issues. An example of this is the impact of high sedimentation on water treatment plants due to high intensity rainfall after drought.

The level of the councils' understanding of climate change impacts on infrastructure varies between infrastructure types and hazards. There are many opportunities for improvement. In some cases there is good information on climate hazards, but the consequences are poorly understood (e.g. the impact of higher tides with sea level rise on stormwater drainage). Where there is uncertainty in the hazard data (e.g. the relationship between increased rainfall intensity and the geotechnical stability of roads) understanding is further limited.

Requirements for infrastructure upgrades to address climate change projections can be difficult to calculate given the high levels of uncertainty. This makes it difficult to develop cost projections. Balancing future planning requirements against the need to maintain current levels of service and replace aging infrastructure can be challenging in the absence of adequate climate risk information and planning tools.

Key risks for some major infrastructure groups are described below.

### Water supply

Northland traditionally has a high mean annual rainfall spread over the entire year with a peak in winter, which allows urban water supplies to rely on consistent rainfall to maintain dam storage and extraction from river flows. Under climate projections, seasonal variations and increases in the frequency and severity of drought conditions are expected to create issues for water supply infrastructure.

A demonstration of Northland's sensitivity to prolonged periods without significant rainfall occurred in the 2020 drought, during which all three Northland districts imposed restrictions, and emergency water provisions were required in the Far North, including in the towns of Kaitiāia and Kaikohe. Following the flooding events that broke the drought, large amounts of sediment entered water treatment plants, resulting in cuts to water supplies in some areas. Drought can also affect non-council supplies, with many households running out of tank or spring water during the 2020 drought, resulting in prolonged waiting times for rural tanker supplies. Marae and rural communities were particularly affected, and a coordinated effort was required to provide emergency water supplies to communities.

Coastal communities relying on shallow groundwater to supplement tank supply (e.g. Matapouri and Russell) have experienced saline intrusion due to high levels of extraction during low rainfall periods, and limited groundwater recharge. Sea level rise is likely to exacerbate this occurrence and could potentially render the groundwater permanently undrinkable in some areas. Continued impacts on communities without council water supplies may result in increased requirements to provide a reticulated supply, or to improve emergency supply facilities.

### Wastewater, stormwater and flood management

As rainfall intensity increases with climate change, what are currently infrequent minor flooding events are projected to become more regular events. This will affect councils' ability to provide expected levels of service for stormwater and wastewater. Other impacts related to rainfall intensity include the increase in sediment entering stormwater networks, causing pipe blockages, and an increase in the frequency of stormwater ingress into wastewater pipes systems, causing overloading of networks and exceeding the capacity of treatment systems.

While climate change projections are built into specifications for new assets, the existing stock of aging infrastructure is unlikely to be able to cope with the combined pressures of climate change, population growth and urban redevelopment. Retrospective upgrades of urban wastewater and stormwater networks to meet future needs are often prohibitively expensive.



Turntable Hill flooding

Stormwater services are also impacted by sea level rise. In some Northland townships (e.g. Whangārei and Dargaville), stormwater networks are located on low-lying coastal plains, with tidal tailwater conditions restricting drainage even at current day high tides. This can result in surface flooding at high tide, causing significant damage to property, which will be worsened with sea level rise. In townships where coastal flood protection is required, investment in stormwater pumping infrastructure may be necessary to remove ponded stormwater behind stopbanks. Ongoing investment in short to medium-term adaptation solutions such as sea walls can create the risk of incentivising development in areas that face future exposure to sea level rise. This may result in higher long-term risk for communities.

#### **Raupo land drainage scheme**

Since 1905 the Raupo land drainage scheme and stopbank system in Kaipara District has managed river and coastal flooding and catchment drainage for 8,200ha of highly productive land, including the township of Ruawai and settlements of Raupo and Naumai. Once Kahikatea and Kauri forests and swampland, the majority of this land is well below sea level. The drainage scheme consists of 130 kilometres of drains, 70 kilometres of stopbanks, 52 saltwater floodgates, three flood detention dams, and one pumping station (as the system relies mostly on gravity). Management of the scheme is predominantly funded by a targeted rate for farmers and residents residing in the drainage district.

Even with the flood management and drainage system in place, coastal hazards mapping shows extreme exposure for Ruawai, Raupo and Naumai residents and for public infrastructure. A high proportion of the roading network, wastewater systems, and water reticulation systems is exposed to 50 year and 100 year coastal flooding and permanent tidal inundation. Kaipara District Council and the Ruawai community are limited in their ability to fund future costs to upgrade the stopbanks and drainage systems to continue to manage coastal flooding, river flooding and permanent tidal inundation.

Most Northland councils operate flood management and/or agricultural drainage schemes that may be affected by increased rainfall intensity and sea level rise. For example, Kaipara District Council operates and maintains 30 drainage districts. Major schemes in Northland include the Raupo land drainage scheme (Kaipara District Council), the Hikurangi flood management scheme (Whangārei District Council), and the Awanui flood protection scheme and coastal stopbanks (Northland Regional Council). The ability of these schemes to continue functioning efficiently in future climate scenarios is poorly understood. Climate change impacts will likely make overtopping events more regular, which reduces the economic value of the schemes and requires investment. Urban flood protection schemes (e.g. Whangārei, Kaitiāia and Kāeo) will also be impacted, with further infrastructure likely to be required to maintain current levels of service.

#### **Roading**

Northland's roads are already affected by hazards such as river flooding (e.g. SH1 Whakapara), slips and geotechnical instability (e.g. SH1 Mangamuka gorge), coastal erosion (e.g. SH12 Ōpononī) and frequent coastal flooding (e.g. West Coast Rd, Panguru). In some areas local roads are also affected by tidal inundation, which impedes drainage from rain events (e.g. Punuruku).

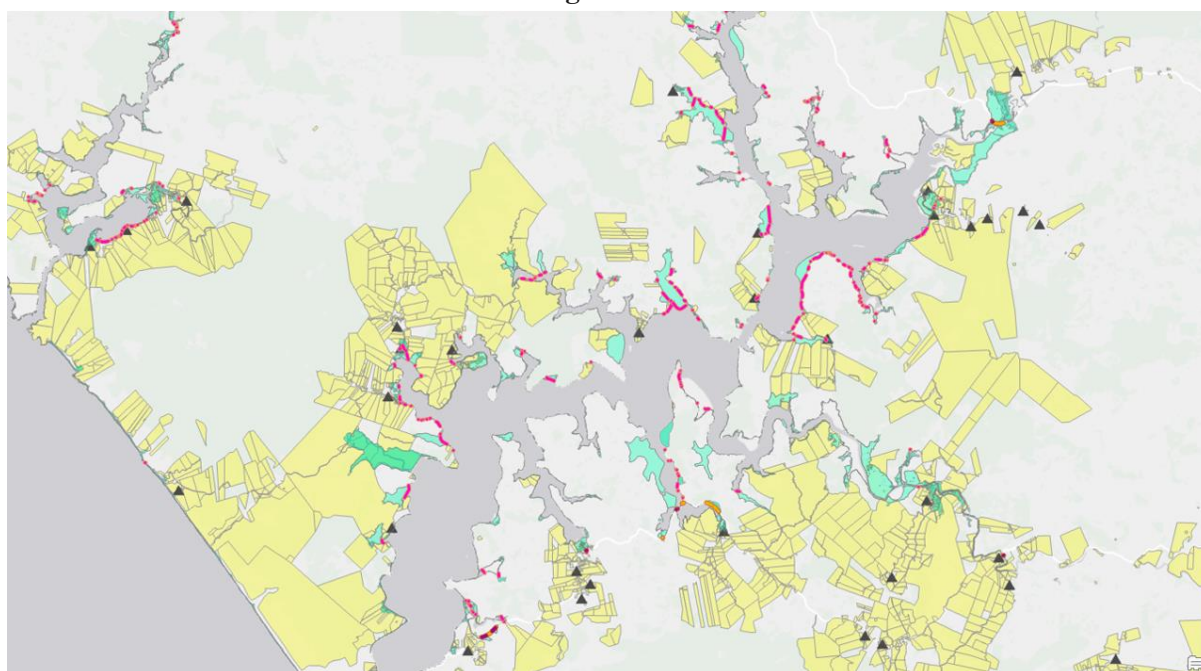
Climate projections indicate that these impacts will all increase in frequency and severity over time. A 2019 study by NIWA showed that Northland has around 10% of the total length of roads across New Zealand which are

projected to be exposed to coastal flooding under sea level rise scenarios<sup>39</sup>. Analysis of existing roads in the northern Kaipara using recent modelling shows that up to 80km of roads could be inundated by regular high tides due to sea level rise by 2130. In a 100-year coastal flooding event, nearly 100km of roads are projected to be flooded to a depth of more than one metre. This indicates that interruptions to road connectivity, especially in outlying areas, are likely to become more regular and prolonged.

Mapping of permanent tidal inundation with sea level rise shows that many sections of Northland's roads will require raising or relocation. In some areas such as the Hokianga, roads are already affected by spring tides, so the projected impacts of sea level rise will affect the connectivity of communities over time. The costs of implementing effective adaptation solutions may be unaffordable for the councils, and poses a risk that these communities, which have high Māori populations, are likely to be disproportionately affected.

### Waste disposal

**Road inundation due to sea level rise – Hokianga**



The map above shows Māori freehold land (yellow) and marae (black triangles), overlaid by projected extents of high-tide inundation by 2130 – land (green) and roads (pink/orange). Connecting infrastructure (such as roading) is likely to play a major part in climate adaptation responses for remote communities in this and similar areas.

<sup>39</sup> <https://deepsouthchallenge.co.nz/wp-content/uploads/2021/01/Exposure-to-Coastal-Flooding-Final-Report.pdf>



There are several landfill sites in Northland that may be subject to coastal or river flooding and erosion. These include both formal landfills (often operated and maintained by the councils) and informal sites (e.g. illegal or ad-hoc dumps), as well as unidentified sites. While some obvious coastal sites such as Pohe Island (Whangārei Harbour) are assessed to have a low risk, a number of historic landfills have been mapped as higher risk due to their proximity to areas prone to coastal hazards.

## WHAT ARE THE CURRENT RESPONSES?

### Information and planning

Detailed region-wide and catchment-specific models and information on river flooding and coastal hazards have been developed and are continually refined by Northland Regional Council. This information helps inform the specifications for new infrastructure, such as road levels and drainage requirements for subdivisions. The district councils are investing in models to help understand climate risks. For example, Whangārei District Council is developing a stormwater network model that will enable the development of engineering adaptation options. This information will aid community adaptation planning for the delivery of the Blue-Green Network Strategy, which aims to reduce river and coastal flood risk and provide transport connectivity and waterway restoration outcomes.

Councils are now using hazard information to undertake high-level climate risk assessments on infrastructure assets. The coastal adaptation programme (which is currently being developed) uses recent coastal hazard assessments to document at-risk three waters and roading infrastructure in coastal communities. The Northland Lifelines group is conducting a lifelines infrastructure risk assessment, and the Northland Transport Alliance is developing resilience assessments for roads. Nonetheless, infrastructure risk assessments in Northland largely remain at a relatively low ('risk screening') level of resolution. Mostly they do not consider multiple hazards, impacts on network connectivity, differential consequences across infrastructure types, or estimated costs of mitigation or risk management.

### Risk management actions

Engineering designs for new council infrastructure generally incorporate design guidance requiring allowance for climate change, for instance stormwater drainage capacity (extreme rainfall), or tailwater levels and road surface height (sea level rise). Adaptation responses for existing infrastructure are generally limited to improvements during asset replacements and upgrades, such as bridge soffit levels.

Water supply infrastructure is in different stages of adaptation maturity. In Whangārei district, an adaptive planning approach has been taken to anticipate future drivers of demand for the city's water supplies. While this has largely been to address anticipated population growth, demand level indicators have been used to trigger different programme requirements. These include increasing efficiency of the current system, demand management, planning for future needs through engineering assessments, and obtaining resource consents for water takes and land purchases for water storage. In other areas, the focus has been on addressing immediate needs and reducing the risk of water shortages. The Three Waters Reform process should address some of the existing shortfalls in water supply infrastructure.

The region has a 30-year programme of river flood management work, focusing on priority at-risk locations (e.g. Awanui catchment/Kaitāia, Moerewa, Kāeo and Whangārei). The programme will reduce risk for communities through the design and construction of stopbanks, spillways, benching and stream maintenance. Continuing this programme into the future is vital to reduce risks to communities at risk from flooding under climate change scenarios (priority action 33).

#### Priority action #33

##### 33 River flood management

Aim: Reduce flooding risk to communities through river management.

Description: Continue to deliver prioritised river flood management projects, and plan and secure funding for future flood management implementation across the region.

Risk mitigation of coastal flooding and erosion includes the use of sea walls, rock revetments and stopbanks. In general, the councils do not build coastal protection unless council-owned assets are at risk, and the adoption of nature-based solutions, like those promoted by Northland Regional Council's CoastCare programme, are often favoured due to the many co-benefits provided. In some areas such as Ruawai and Awanui, flood management schemes originally designed for agricultural purposes protect small rural townships from regular coastal inundation, although coastal hazard assessments indicate that the level of protection will not continue with future sea level rise.



Tangowahine flooding



## WHAT ARE SOME FUTURE ADAPTATION OPPORTUNITIES?

### Information and planning

Infrastructure planning is a significant council responsibility that has a major role in enabling communities to adapt. It is essential that infrastructure climate response plans are developed in alignment with community needs and adaptation aspirations (priority actions 15 and 28).

#### Priority actions #15 & #28

##### 15 Infrastructure planning

**Aim:** Ensure consideration of climate change impacts in infrastructure planning.

**Description:** Develop and implement processes/policy to ensure consideration of climate change impacts in infrastructure planning, activity management plans and infrastructure strategies, including a monitoring and evaluation plan. This should include consistent application of climate risk assessments and adaptive management approaches. (N.B. This should also include emissions reductions considerations – see priority actions 11 and 12.)

##### 28 Embed community adaptation plans

**Aim:** Ensure community adaptation plans are embedded in regulatory instruments.

**Description:** Investigate and develop methodologies to embed adaptive pathways plans into planning regimes, including using environmental cues to trigger changes to planning rules. (N.B. RMA reforms will impact this item and review may be required.)

There is an opportunity for the councils to invest in regionally consistent infrastructure climate risk assessments using improved information on climate hazards and infrastructure assets. High resolution data, such as stormwater pipe invert levels, can enable the development of accurate models that inform engineering options assessments and forward planning. Good understanding of the impacts of climate change hazards and stressors on assets will help asset planners develop potential infrastructure solutions under climate change scenarios, which are aligned with community needs and other socio-economic factors (e.g. population growth).



A good first step will be to develop aligned climate risk assessments across all infrastructure departments that demonstrate expected costs and damage loss assessments (priority actions 11–14). Further investigations into the interactions of multiple hazards and stressors on infrastructure is also required.

**Priority actions #11, #12, #13 & #14**

**11 Consistent infrastructure risk assessment criteria**

- Aim:** Improve consistency and quality of climate risk assessments for council assets and infrastructure.
- Description:** Develop consistent standards and processes for undertaking risk assessments for council assets and infrastructure (e.g. agreed criteria, hazard scenarios and damage functions).

**12 Infrastructure risk assessments**

- Aim:** Improve knowledge of climate risk for council assets and infrastructure.
- Description:** Undertake infrastructure climate risk assessments for each council and include documented climate risks in infrastructure and financial strategies.

**13 Roothing risk assessments**

- Aim:** Improve understanding of long-term climate risks to roading infrastructure.
- Description:** Develop a regional roading network resilience plan, assessing critical roads at risk from landslides and slips, with the potential for future assessment of flooding and coastal hazards under climate change scenarios.

**14 Lifelines risk assessments**

- Aim:** Improve understanding of long-term climate risks to lifelines infrastructure.
- Description:** Develop a lifelines utilities infrastructure risk assessment, working with Northland Lifelines Group members' spatial data.

Planning appropriate infrastructure to cope with climate impacts will require a focus on risk management approaches for existing infrastructure. This requires scenario planning to anticipate future needs and avoid over-investment in short-term solutions. For example, this could involve moving from a risk elimination strategy (e.g. coastal stopbanks with stormwater pumping) towards a risk acceptance and avoidance strategy (e.g. long-term changes to land use, reduced levels of service and/or managed infrastructure withdrawal). Infrastructure planning approaches should limit reactive or business-as-usual investments that ignore long-term trends due to climate change. This is particularly relevant when climate hazards are experienced as rare events, such as coastal flooding due to cyclones.

### Risk management actions

Once a reasonable understanding of risks is achieved, pre-feasibility investigations for cultural, engineering, and consenting limitations, alongside cost analyses, can help inform options analyses. These can be used in community engagement for decision-making, either through a community adaptation planning process or on a project basis.

Improved funding models will help embed adaptation in infrastructure planning. These models should include the benefits of proactive risk management in business cases and allow for flexibility in timing of implementation. Improved processes for cost forecasting and inclusion in financial and infrastructure strategies will also be required. Better understanding of the risks to infrastructure will improve the councils' ability to disclose their financial risks and better consider climate change when developing funding applications and business cases (priority actions 40 and 41).

#### Priority actions #40 & #41

##### 40 Climate risk disclosure

Aim: Ensure transparent monitoring and reporting of climate risks and responses.

Description: Clear disclosure and reporting of climate risks, policy maturity, and progress on response actions in alignment with the recommendations of the Taskforce on Climate-related Financial Disclosure. This may include actions such as ensuring climate change is included in council risk frameworks, financial reports and infrastructure strategies; regularly reporting to auditors; and establishing KPIs for senior managers and CEOs.

##### 41 Climate change in business cases

Aim: Embed climate change considerations in business cases and procurement policies.

Description: Ensure disclosure of climate change risks in business cases, proposals and procurement documents, including long-term risks such as sea level rise.

Examples of future infrastructure adaptation planning projects may include the following.

#### Roading

- Develop options to resolve long-term permanent tidal inundation issues, including a prioritisation plan/methodology and costings for road relocation or raising.
- Complete a comprehensive coastal erosion assessment detailing required protection for hotspots, and likely impacts on cultural, community and environmental values.
- Determine requirements for bridge and culvert upgrades, considering the impact of sea-level rise on coastal floodplains.

### **Wastewater**

- Research the impact of higher temperatures on wastewater treatment, especially open ponds (including methane emissions).
- Investigate the impacts of increases of higher intensity rainfall on network and treatment plant capacity.

### **Stormwater and flooding**

- Develop models to show the impact of tidal inundation on drainage in urban areas.
- Improve the integration of compound coastal and river flooding data, including a worst-case cyclone flooding model.
- Undertake better modelling of increased rainfall intensity on urban stormwater networks.



**Coastal slip at Kerikeri Basin, below pā site**

## Part 3. Enabling effective adaptation

### Future directions

Responding to the impacts of climate change will affect many activities the councils carry out, so it is vital to have widespread commitment and alignment across (and between) organisations. Climate change acts as a ‘risk multiplier’ and will likely create the need for different types of adaptation responses, depending on a wide range of activities. Some responses, such as regulatory policy development and environmental management programmes, may require major changes or entirely new activities. Others, such as infrastructure planning, will need to adjust risk management settings.

We have assessed adaptation needs across council activities with the aim of prioritising adaptation actions based on a) the level of understanding of climate risk and impacts, and b) the level of responsibility for the councils to manage the risk. The assessment highlighted areas that urgently required further investigation (such as impacts on biosecurity and biodiversity, and infrastructure assessments); areas where the councils need to do planning and engagement, such as coastal adaptation planning and impacts on Māori; and areas where continued action is required, such as river flood management works.

One recurring theme in adaptation is the need to bring communities along on the journey. This is consistent with the purpose of local government. Developing good relationships and trust with communities is a necessary condition for doing adaptation planning work, particularly where the impacts on communities may be big, or perceived negatively – for example, where adaptation involves progressively restrictive planning rules, or large costs to pay for infrastructure. Using appropriate community engagement processes, as well as decision-support tools that enable community ownership of the process, can help resolve complex and controversial issues.

Working collaboratively with Māori as tangata whenua – and demonstrating the principles of partnership, participation and protection – at all stages of adaptation is vital for the councils. Co-developing holistic adaptation responses to climate change presents an opportunity for the councils to work with Māori on a broad range of environmental, social and cultural issues, across many council functions.

### Four areas of action

We have identified priority actions to enable local government to carry out effective adaptation in Northland. These are grouped into four areas:

1. Grow relationships (priority actions 1–8)
2. Improve knowledge and understanding (priority actions 9–24)
3. Reduce risk and vulnerability (priority actions 25–36)
4. Build capacity (priority actions 37–46).

Recommended actions are summarised below, and are described in detail in Part 5 – ‘Priority actions’, with additional information on lead organisations, delivery timeframes and funding status.

## 1. Grow relationships

- Partner with tangata whenua at all stages of adaptation planning, ensuring Māori voices are included in decision-making, including supporting hapū and iwi to lead local adaptation planning.
- Facilitate collaborative planning with local communities, by developing trust and long-term relationships and by helping residents and businesses pursue opportunities for resilience.
- Communicate with communities about adaptation information and processes, and listen to their feedback, particularly from farming and coastal communities.
- Work across departments in each council to integrate climate change priorities and ensure alignment between activity areas.
- Continue to coordinate adaptation programmes between the councils and share resources.
- Work together across different levels of government, and sectors including Māori, communities, businesses and research institutes.
- Advocate and engage with central government agencies on adaptation funding, legislation, policy and support.

## 2. Improve knowledge and understanding

- Identify key knowledge gaps and develop targeted investigations and research.
- Expand the existing knowledge base through research, assessments and investigations.
- Work with iwi and hapū to enable Māori traditional knowledge to guide the councils' climate change approaches.
- Work with communities to understand risks and the range of potential solutions, and to pursue current and future opportunities.
- Monitor, evaluate and report on climate risks, community vulnerability and environmental indicators.
- Develop research partnerships with institutes and collaborate on externally funded research.

## 3. Reduce risk and vulnerability

- Pre-emptively plan adaptation responses at the local scale, working with communities, tangata whenua, infrastructure providers, government agencies and stakeholders, using appropriate engagement processes and decision-support tools.
- Use adaptation planning engagement and education processes to empower communities to proactively pursue new opportunities, increase resilience and build adaptive capacity.
- Develop rules and policies that reduce risk and enable appropriate and flexible adaptation responses.
- Plan for, and invest in, long-term risk management infrastructure and solutions for a wide range of climate risks.
- Adopt appropriate nature-based responses and interim measures.



#### 4. Build capacity

- Demonstrate leadership through effective and collaborative governance.
- Build internal staff capacity and resources, through specialist teams and across/between organisations.
- Develop consistent climate change policy between the councils, and integrate climate change objectives across council policies, strategies and processes.
- Provide sufficient funding for adaptation activities, including investigations, planning, engagement, and implementation where appropriate.
- Identify collaborative and external funding opportunities.



Riparian planting by a dune lake

## Part 4. An evolving strategy

### The need to respond to change

This strategy needs to be a living document to remain flexible and responsive to new information, feedback, and changes in the legislative and legal environments, or other major events.

We acknowledge that engagement with tangata whenua and our communities will take time. As we have wider and deeper conversations with those affected by climate change, our understanding of the consequences of climate change and the challenges of adaptation will improve. Updates to the strategy and projects in Part 5 – ‘Priority actions’ will need to be made as required.

The strategy will also need to be reviewed after the release of new government legislation or guidance, such as the upcoming National Adaptation Plan and RMA reform, including the Climate Change Adaptation Act, or other major changes such as local government reform. New scientific evidence or case law may also prompt the need for a review, as might regular updates aligned with the councils’ long-term planning processes. Changes could range from minor alterations to major overhauls, and these will require different approaches.

### Review process

Below we outline an ongoing process for the strategy and priority actions to be updated in response to changing needs. Reviews are grouped into three categories.

1. **Technical:** new technical reports or updates to existing reports.
2. **Minor:** operational and minor updates to the strategy and/or priority actions.
3. **Major:** substantive review and major changes to the strategy and/or priority actions.

Reviews can be triggered by different events or requests, with varying levels of permitted changes, and corresponding engagement and approval processes as needed. At a minimum, the strategy will be reviewed at three-yearly intervals prior to Long-Term Plan consultation. Other reviews will occur in response to feedback, legislative change and other events. Updates to the priority actions will be made as required. Where possible, reviews will be combined for efficiency.

Below is an anticipated timeframe for required reviews.

YEAR	TRIGGER	REVIEW TYPE
As required	New technical reports or changes to existing ones	Technical reports
As required	Updates and additions to priority actions	Minor
As required	Tangata whenua and community feedback	Minor
		Major
2022	National Adaptation Plan	Minor
2023–24 (estimated)	Climate Adaptation Act Built and Natural Environments Act Spatial Planning Act	Major
2024	Long-Term Plan review	Major
2024 (estimated)	Three Waters Reform	Major
2026	Second National Climate Change Risk Assessment	Major
(Uncertain)	Local government reform/amalgamation	Major
2027	Long-Term Plan review	Major
2028	Second National Adaptation Plan	Minor



Details of the three review types are listed in the table below.

1. Technical reports	
<b>Intent:</b>	Provide new technical reports or updates to existing technical reports
<b>Triggers:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Iwi/hapū or community feedback</li> <li>Joint committee requests</li> <li>Staff recommendation (e.g. new information)</li> </ul>
<b>Changes permitted:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Updates as and where required</li> <li>New technical reports and data</li> </ul>
<b>Out of scope:</b>	Changes impacting scope, intent or direction of strategy and priority actions
<b>Engagement required:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Relevant tangata whenua representatives</li> <li>Must be evidence based</li> </ul>
<b>Approval:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Approval by relevant sponsoring GMs</li> <li>Presentation to Joint Committee</li> </ul>
2. Minor updates	
<b>Intent:</b>	Operational and minor updates to strategy and/or priority actions
<b>Triggers:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Iwi/hapū or community feedback</li> <li>Joint committee requests</li> <li>Staff recommendation</li> <li>New or updated information (strategy)</li> <li>Changes in project scope, details or timeframes, additional funding for new projects (priority actions)</li> </ul>
<b>Changes permitted:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Minor editorial changes</li> <li>Addition of paragraphs, sentences or other minor elements (strategy)</li> <li>Alterations to details in descriptions or timeframes (priority actions)</li> <li>Addition of new projects (priority actions)</li> </ul>
<b>Out of scope:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Removal of actions</li> <li>Alterations to structure or foundational elements</li> </ul>
<b>Engagement required:</b>	Relevant tangata whenua representatives
<b>Approval:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Approval by relevant sponsoring GMs</li> <li>Presentation to Joint Committee (approval by individual councils not required if changes are operational)</li> </ul>
3. Major review	
<b>Intent:</b>	Allow for substantive review and major changes to strategy and/or priority actions
<b>Triggers:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Long-Term Plan process</li> <li>New government legislation or guidance</li> <li>New case law</li> <li>Additional scientific or other evidence</li> <li>Local government reform</li> <li>Three Waters reform</li> <li>Iwi/hapū or community feedback</li> <li>Joint committee request</li> <li>Staff recommendation</li> </ul>
<b>Changes permitted:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Major editorial changes</li> <li>Alteration to structure or foundational elements</li> </ul>

3. Major review (cont.)	
<b>Changes permitted contd:</b>	Addition of new sections and headings Addition of new text, diagrams, photos Removal or alteration of existing text
<b>Out of scope:</b>	N/A
<b>Engagement required:</b>	Wide engagement with tangata whenua (initially via representative groups, but in some cases wider engagement may be required) LTP review to be completed in year prior to LTP adoption, in conjunction with community consultation Elected members of all councils Relevant council staff and management
<b>Approval:</b>	Approval of review process by joint committee required Approval by sponsoring GMs of all councils Endorsement by joint committee Adoption by all Northland councils All exceptions to be noted in strategy and priority actions

## Reporting

### Governance

Progress on priority actions will be reported at each Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee meeting. Progress will also be reported to individual councils and committees where relevant.

### Iwi and hapū

Reporting to iwi and hapū will be via existing council representative groups, unless otherwise requested. A process for iwi and hapū engagement will be developed as part of priority actions 1, 2 and 10.

### Public communications

A joint regional communications group has been formed to help support the ongoing, public-facing nature of the strategy and the collaborative adaptation work programme. A communications plan for the strategy, as well as for ongoing region-wide adaptation, is being developed as part of priority actions 7 and 8.

**Authorised by** Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services, on 21  
**Group Manager/s:** April 2022

- Completed H&S inductions for new staff remains low.
- There have been no changes to the top H&S risks to the organisation.
- The number of reported incidents/hazards/near misses continues to trend down.
- A report on the stress survey has been written and has been finalised.

That the report 'Health and Safety Report' by Beryl Steele, Human Resources Manager and dated 21 April 2022, be received.

Table 1 outlines the key lead and lag indicators in health and safety.

- One contractor has been identified as successfully completing the contractor health and safety pre-engagement process in March. As for February, there continues to be low numbers of contractors completing this process. There remains a risk that contractors have been engaged without the required health and safety information being completed or recorded correctly.
- Numbers of completed health and safety inductions for new staff completed remain below performance targets. This will not increase until staff are able to return to the offices.

## 2. Risk management

The top risks are:

Risk	Residual Score
Working with Contractors	16
COVID-19 pandemic	16
Dealing with aggressive people – psychological harm	10
Extended workload/stress	9
Workplace bullying and harassment <i>Note: This due to potential risk, not high numbers</i>	9
Sedentary work – ergonomic harm	8
Working under the influence of drugs and/or alcohol	8
Slips, trips, and falls	8
Driving motor vehicles – accident and injury related	8

*Note: The top risks are identified by the residual risk scores. These risks are the highest after all controls have been put in place. Risk scores are between 1 and 25.*

A review of the scores for the top health and safety risks to the organisation is to be carried out in April. We are currently waiting on additional information as it relates to dealing with aggressive people as there have evidently been a few incidents but they have not been reported.

### Risk Updates

- A report on the results of the stress survey has been finalised. This will be released to staff in April.

### 3. Injuries, incidents, and hazards

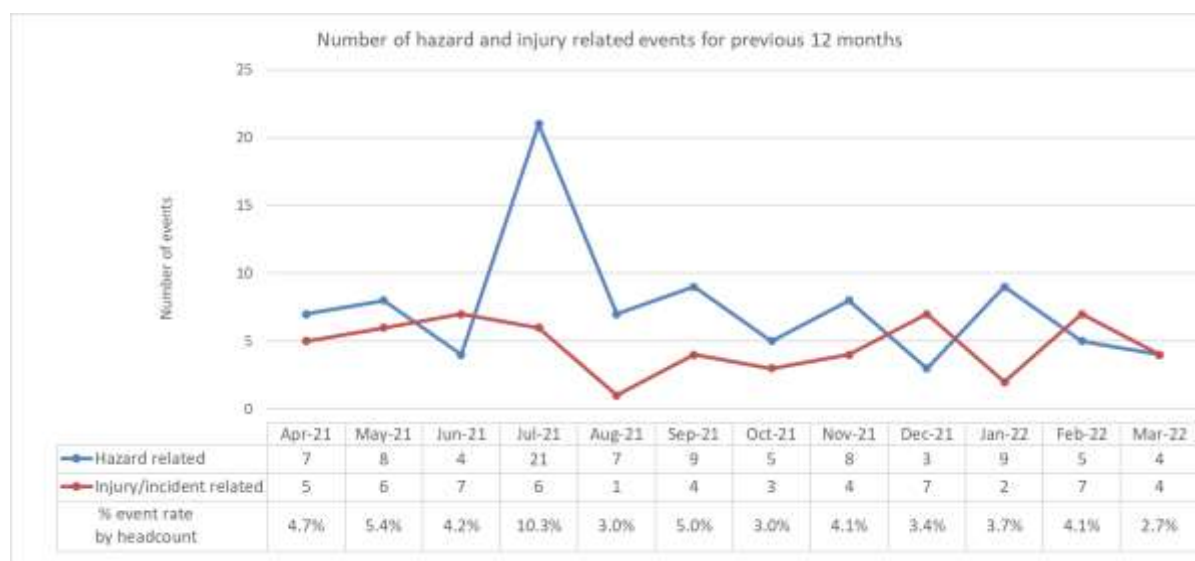


Figure 1: Number of hazard and injury related events for previous 12 months

Figure 1 shows a that numbers of both injury/incident related events and hazard related events reported continue to trend down. Health and Safety Representatives (H&S Reps) will be asked again to remind and encourage teams to report all near misses and hazards.

#### Events reported

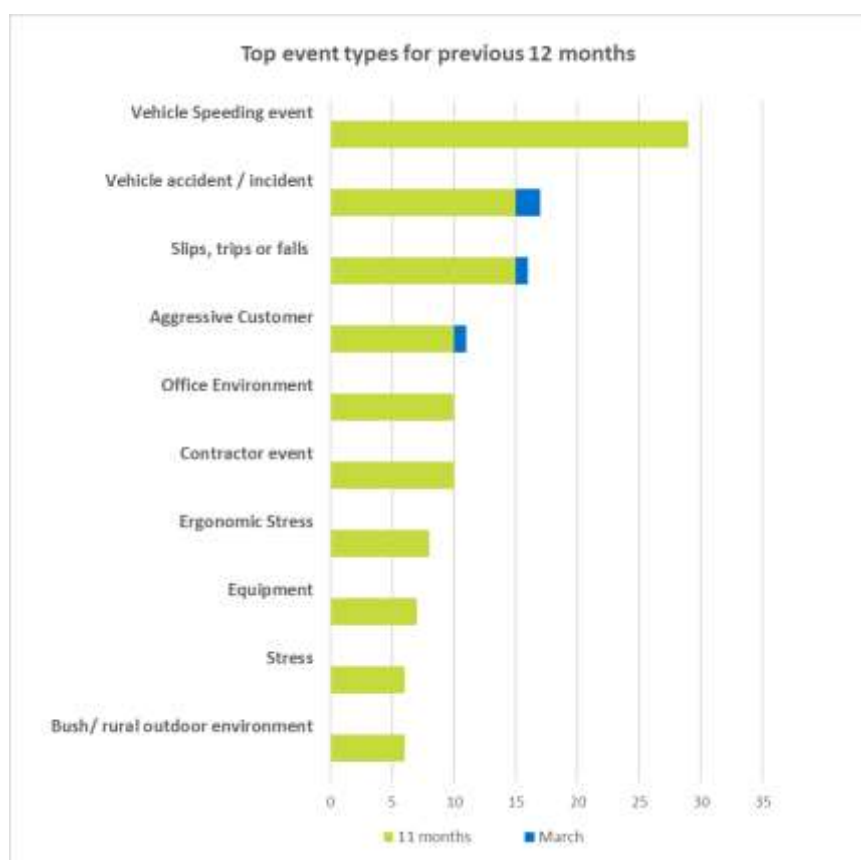


Figure 2: Top event types for previous 12 months

Vehicle speeding events are not included in this month's report as the process for recording these has changed following staff movements and resignations.

### Events of interest

*Note: the events of interest only detail high risk events, or events which affect large groups of people.*

- A hook on the bike rack broke while a staff member was hanging up their bike. The bike fell and they were able to stop it from landing on them without hurting themselves.
- Following the heavy rain event, there was flooding in the eastern corner of the ground floor of the Water Steet office. Ceiling tiles fell down while there was staff member nearby.
- Two staff were visiting a property as part of a routine incident site inspection when the landowner attempted to block their vehicle from leaving the property following an aggressive interaction. They managed to leave the property as their vehicle just fit through the gap.
- One team reported that they were struggling with the working from home requirements and requested they be able to come back to the office soon.

## 4. Health and safety strategy work programme

### Hazards and risks

- Nil

### Injury and illness

- Nil

### Wellbeing

- 28 staff took up the Wellbeing Challenge (5 teams of 5 and 3 individuals) which started in March and ran until the 11<sup>th</sup> April.

### Communication and engagement

- CERT Training (Situational Awareness and Tactical Communication) is underway with a mix of online modules and a 1-day in-class session scheduled for May
- Four-wheel drive training was undertaken.

## 5. Legislative changes

Nil

---

## Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Nil

**TITLE: Chair's Report to Council**

**From:** Penny Smart, Chair

**Authorised by** Penny Smart, Chair, on  
**Group Manager/s:**

---

**Purpose of Report**

This report is to receive information from the Chair on meetings/events attended, and correspondence sent for the month of March 2022

---

**Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation**

That the report 'Chair's Report to Council' by Penny Smart, Chair and dated 12 April 2022, be received.

---

**Meetings/events attended**

During this period, I attended the following meetings/events/functions:

- LGNZ Supporting communities (and leaders) under pressure
- LGNZ Reforms update
- LGNZ FFLG workshop: The system of local governance
- Special Sector Zoom, three waters Working Group Report
- NEMA Trifecta zoom meeting with Minister Allen
- NRC Meeting with Northland Labour Ministers
- LGNZ Zone One meeting
- Northland Forward Together Strategic Planning Workshop - Councillors
- Northland Mayoral Forum
- Northland Forestry Environmental Working Group
- Weekly zooms with Northland Mayors
- LGNZ Covid update

---

**Correspondence**

During March I sent out the following correspondence:

Date	Addressed To	Subject
01.03.2022	Project Coordinator, Northern New Zealand Seabird Trust	NRC Letter of support for Northland Seabird Trust
02.03.2022	Urban Water Team, Ministry for the Environment	NRC submission - Changes to the National Environmental Standards for Human Sources of Drinking Water
04.03.2022	Ngāti Takapari, Te Waiariki, Ngāti Kororā	Letter of response re Ngunguru sandspit

Date	Addressed To	Subject
28.03.2022	Te Roroa Board of Trustees	Congratulatory letter for GM at Te Roroa at Board of Trustees re Māori Award in Biosecurity
30.03.2022	NRC Education Manager	Biosecurity Award for the NRC Education Manager

---

**Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga**

Nil



**TITLE:** Chief Executive's Report to Council

**From:** Malcolm Nicolson, Tumuaki - Chief Executive Officer

**Authorised by Group Manager/s:** Malcolm Nicolson, Tumuaki - Chief Executive Officer, on 21 April 2022

---

### Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation

That the report 'Chief Executive's Report to Council' by Malcolm Nicolson, Tumuaki - Chief Executive Officer and dated 1 April 2022, be received.

---

#### 8.3.1 HIGHLIGHTS

---

##### Resilient River Communities Newsletter – April 2022

The full article can be found at this link: <https://www.resilientrivers.nz/news/building-bridges-into-the-future>



#### Building bridges into the future

Pamela-Anne Ngohe Simon's role in the Ōtiria Spillway Project has been one of quiet perseverance. Ngohe Simon sits on the Taumārere Flood Management Working Group board and has been a fierce advocate of the project to help protect the townships of Ōtiria and Morewa in Northland. "Ōtiria suffers a phenomenal amount of flooding, every time it floods, we suffer". [read more >>>](#)

### 8.3.2 CEO'S OFFICE

#### Current Legal Proceedings

Department	Description	Status
<b>Consent decision appeal</b>	Two separate consent applications for replacement and new consents relating to a proposed expansion of, Doug's Opua Boat Yard in Walls Bay, Ōpua	A memo from the council has been provided to the Court advising of progress to date with appeals, and that agreement has been reached with the applicant on a set of draft conditions to satisfy the appeal. The council awaits further direction from the Court on this appeal.
<b>Consent decision appeal</b>	Irrigation of avocado orchards and horticulture crops	Additional expert conferencing for hydrogeologists and planners has taken place. Final rebuttal evidence due 8 April 2022. Court Hearing still scheduled to commence on 9 May 2022.

### 8.3.3 CORPORATE SERVICES

#### Fraud Declaration

I am not aware of any fraud nor am I investigating any incidence or suspected incidence of fraud at this time.

#### Council Property Update

Kaipara Service Centre Practical Completion is expected later this month and the opening ceremony is fixed for 29 April 2022. KDC and NRC will move in over the month of May and KDC's lease commences 1 June 2022.

The NIWA Kingfish RAS site works have been focused on progressing the fish tanks and RAS tanks, the majority of the eight fish tanks are now cast. Despite the project having incurred additional Covid-19 related costs and delays, the project remains on budget and is only a few weeks behind the target delivery date. The website used to publicly promote the kingfish production project has information on the science and the environmental benefits of land based aquaculture. We are also developing a fact sheet. See <https://niwa.co.nz/aquaculture/our-services/our-facilities#goals>

NIWA Kingfish tanks progressing



### Enterprise System update

	Status	Notes
<b>Timeline</b>		After working through timeline challenges with the vendor, this is now back to green
<b>Budget</b>		Tracking under budget
<b>Quality</b>		After working through implementation approach challenges with the vendor, this is now back to green

Key:

	Tracking according to plan
	There are challenges, but they can be addressed at project level
	There are issues that cannot be resolved at project level, need help from the project governance group

### 8.3.4 REGULATORY SERVICES

#### Consents in Process

During March 2022, a total of 82 Decisions were issued. These decisions comprised:

- Moorings 5
- Coastal Permits 11
- Land Discharge Permits 9
- Land Use Consents 25
- Water Permits 14
- Bore Consents 18

The processing timeframes for the March 2022 consents ranged from:

- 179 to 7 calendar days, with the median time being 29 days;
- 110 to 5 working days, with the median time being 20 days.

Sixty-eight applications were received in March 2022.

Of the 120 applications in progress at the end of March 2022:

- 29 were received more than 12 months ago;  
Reasons for being more than 12 months old:
  - Awaiting additional information (including CIAs) 12
  - Consultation with affected parties/stakeholders 4
  - On-hold pending new rules becoming operative 6
  - Other 7
- 16 were received between 6 and 12 months ago (most awaiting further information from the applicant);
- 76 less than 6 months.

#### Appointment of Hearing Commissioners

No commissioners were appointed in March 2022.

### Consents Decisions and Progress on Notified Applications in Process, Objections and Appeals

The current level of notified application processing activities at the end of March 2022 is (by number):

• Applications Publicly/Limited Notified During Previous Month	0
• Progress on Applications Previously Notified	5
• Hearings and Decisions	0
• Appeals/Objections	2

### COMPLIANCE MONITORING

The results of compliance monitoring for the period 1 – 31 March 2022 (and year-to-date figures) are summarised in the following table and discussed below.

Classification	Total	Full compliance	Low risk non-compliance	Moderate non-compliance	Significant non-compliance	Not exercised during period
Air Discharge	31	26	1	1	0	3
Bore Consent	28	26	2	0	0	0
Coastal Discharge	21	13	3	4	1	0
Coastal Permit	90	71	12	1	0	6
Land Discharge	101	80	6	5	0	10
Land Use Consent	64	55	1	3	0	5
Water Discharge	66	49	8	3	5	1
Water Permit	59	52	4	2	0	1
Water Take	139	67	30	39	0	3
<b>Total</b>	<b>599</b>	<b>439</b>	<b>67</b>	<b>58</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>Percentage</b>		<b>73.3%</b>	<b>11.2%</b>	<b>9.7%</b>	<b>1.0%</b>	<b>4.8%</b>
<b>Year to date</b>	<b>4734</b>	<b>3488</b>	<b>578</b>	<b>329</b>	<b>62</b>	<b>277</b>
<b>Percentage</b>		<b>73.7%</b>	<b>12.2%</b>	<b>6.9%</b>	<b>1.3%</b>	<b>5.9%</b>

#### Coastal

There were ongoing inspections of, and reporting on, coastal permits in the Far North District. The coastal compliance officers have also been supporting the Water Quality Field Operations Team in shellfish surveys and estuary monitoring work.

Compliance monitoring for all marinas has been completed. Marine farm compliance monitoring has commenced with aerial inspections completed for the Kaipara and Bay of Islands areas. Annual sediment compliance monitoring has been undertaken for Mangōnui Mill Bay. Enforcement action was undertaken against Russell Boating Club and in relation to the Tutukaka Slipway.

#### Water, Waste, Air and Land Use (WWALU) Compliance Monitoring

##### • Contaminated Land Management

Six incidents involving the discharge of hazardous substances and 18 enquiries regarding contaminated land were received and responded to. 693kg of hazardous waste was disposed of at the amnesty day, and six sites were added to the Selected Land-Use Register. There are now 1,288 sites recorded on the register.

• *Municipal Wastewater Treatments Plants*

WWTP/Consent Status	Issues (April 2022)	Enforcement Action/Response
<b>Far North District</b>		
<b>Ahipara</b> Expires 2033	Ongoing non-compliance with bacteriological consent limits	<u>Under AN</u> FNDC investigating land disposal options
<b>Hihi</b> Expires 2022	No recent issues	None currently
<b>Kāeo</b> Expires 2022	No recent issues	None currently
<b>Kaikohe</b> Expires 30 November 2021	Intermittent non-compliances with ADW flow, ammonia & bacteriological consent limits. System overdue for de-sludging	None currently Issues will be addressed in replacement consent
<b>Kaitaia</b> Expires 30 November 2021	No recent issues	<u>Under AN</u> (reticulation overflows) Issues will be addressed in replacement consent
<b>Kawakawa</b> Expires 2036	No recent issues	None currently
<b>Kerikeri</b> Expires 2036	No obvious issues from new plant (commissioned in December 2020)	<u>Under AN</u>
<b>Kohukohu</b> Expired 2016 (replacement consent application on hold)	Occasional issues with bacteriological conditions of consent	None currently
<b>Opononi &amp; Ōmāpere</b> Expired 2019	Non-compliances with bacteriological consent limits Desludging overdue	<u>Under AN</u> Issues will be addressed in replacement consent; desludging to be undertaken
<b>Paihia</b> Expires 2034	Plant upgraded 2019; alkalinity issues preventing optimal ammonia treatment	None currently Alkalinity improvement project still in progress
<b>Rangiputa</b> Expires 2032	No recent issues	None currently
<b>Rāwene</b> Expires 2023	System overdue for de-sludging	Infringement notices issued in February 2022 in relation to a discharge from the reticulation
<b>Russell</b> Expires 2024	Occasional non-compliances with E. coli consent limit post UV	<u>Under AN</u> Infringement notices issued January 2022
<b>Taipā</b> Expires 2029	No recent issues	None currently
<b>Whatuwhiwhi</b> Expires 2025	Elevated TSS levels (consent limit may be unnecessarily restrictive)	FNDC to seek consent variation to address TSS levels – however this is not a priority
<b>Whangarei District</b>		
<b>Hikurangi</b> Expires 2025	Intermittent issues with plant performance	None currently Plant performance being reviewed to identify improvements



WWTP/Consent Status	Issues (April 2022)	Enforcement Action/Response
<b>Ngunguru</b> Expires 2035	No recent issues	None currently
<b>Ōākura</b> Expires 2025	Occasional spikes in E. coli	None currently
<b>Portland</b> Expires 2024	No recent issues	None currently
<b>Ruakākā</b> Expires 2046	No recent issues	None currently
<b>Tutukaka</b> Expires 2024	No recent issues	None currently
<b>Waiōtira</b> Expires 2030	No recent issues	None currently
<b>Waipū</b> Expires 2030	No recent issues	None currently
<b>Whāngārei City</b> Expires 2022	Odour issues	Abatement notice issued requiring actions to be implemented to mitigate the odour emanating from the treatment plant
<b>Kaipara District</b>		
<b>Dargaville</b> Expires 2022	Non-compliances with WQ discharge volume consent limits	<u>Under AN</u>
<b>Glinks Gully</b> Expires 2024	No recent issues	None currently
<b>Kaiwaka</b> Expires 2022	No recent issues	None currently
<b>Mangawhai</b> Expires 2042	Odour complaints and occasional exceedances of TDS consent limit	<u>Under AN</u>
<b>Maungaturoto</b> Expires 2032	Intermittent non-compliances, generally due to high rainfall	<u>Under AN</u>
<b>Te Kopuru</b> Expires 2044	Intermittent minor non-compliances	Second aerator installed 2020

### Environmental Incidents

There were no environmental incidents reported in February which resulted in a significant environmental impact.

### ENFORCEMENT

#### Abatement Notices, Infringement Notices and Formal Warnings

The following is a summary of the abatement and infringement notices issued:

Action Type	Number
Abatement Notice	15
Infringement Notice	3

#### Other Enforcement

- *Open burning on industrial/trade property – Whangārei*

Charges were laid in the Whangārei District Court on 27 November 2020 against an individual for open burning on industrial/trade premises; the burnt items also included prohibited items.

There are two charges against the individual who pleaded not guilty on 30 April 2021. The Court

has allocated new hearing dates to 25 – 27 May 2022. Witnesses have confirmed their availability.

- *Farm dairy effluent – Parapara*

Charges were laid in the Kaitia District Court on 6 May 2021 against a farm owner for offences which occurred in August 2020. There are four charges against the farm owner. Following reports that were received confirming that the farm owner was not able to enter plea and provide instructions, the judge has made the following two decisions:

1. The farm owner is unfit to stand trial.
2. Based on the NRC's summary of facts, the farm owner caused acts that formed the basis of all four offences. Those offences are very serious. The psychologist will provide a final report by 16 May 2022.

The court adjourned the case to 2 June 2022 with the farm owner to attend.

- *Vessel occupying CMA & removal of asbestos from CMA – Town Basin, Whangārei*

The Court has issued an enforcement order on 8 April 2022 against the individual responsible for the vessel requiring him to cease occupying the coastal marine with the vessel in a manner that contravenes Rule C.1.2.1. of the Proposed Regional Plan for Northland - Appeals Version October 2021. The enforcement order proceeding for the costs is on hold while the parties are in the process of negotiating a settlement of the costs claim.

- *Earthworks & vegetation clearance within a wetland – Teal Bay*

Charges were laid in the Whangarei District Court on 7 December 2021 against four parties for offences that occurred in December 2020. During a court appearance via Teams in March 2022, defendants' lawyers have requested more time to consider disclosure, provide advice, get instructions and discuss with NRC. Court has adjourned the case to 2 June 2022 with pleas having to be entered on that day.

### 8.3.5 ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES

#### LAND MANAGEMENT

##### Sustainable Hill Country and Regional Priorities

Milestones	Status
Soil conservation Plans	To date, 50 (37%) of 136 soil conservation plans have been completed in 2021-2022. Nine are in progress. We will not meet our soil conservation plan KPI's for the SHaRP programme and are engaging with MPI around the reasons for this and seeking agreement on a way forward. A full report was provided to the February Land and Water Working Party.

## BIODIVERSITY

### FIF Dune Lakes Project

Objective	Status
Aquatic weed control	<p>Resource consent was lodged to add Lake Karaka to the hornwort control programme. Karaka is currently experiencing an algal bloom, and pre-monitoring Lake Submerged Plant Index (LakeSPI) has been postponed until cooler weather in April.</p> <p>A contract was signed with Skywork to carry out Aquathol treatment of five lakes. Several Covid and weather-related postponements meant that the operations were finally undertaken in the last week of March. Follow-up accidental by-kill and water quality monitoring was carried out 48 hours later with no by-kill found and water quality parameters within guidelines. However, subsequent monitoring has revealed wetland non target vegetation by-kill. Both regulatory bodies have been notified – NRC and EPA. Further investigations are ongoing. While it is anticipated that vegetation will naturally regenerate, a remediation plan will be developed if required. Staff will continue to monitor this situation and provide ongoing updates.</p> <p>One lake was dropped due to a rain event filling the lake and establishing an outflow to the beach. Treatment will be done once the flow closes off.</p>

### Lakes Ecological Survey / Monitoring

Permission was granted from mana whenua and other landowners around the rohe to access 26 lakes during the 10-day lakes ecological monitoring however, NIWA divers were stood down due to Worksafe requirements around COVID-19 and the survey was cancelled. Plans are underway to get at least some of the lakes monitored before year end.

### CoastCare

Dune vegetation annual monitoring is almost complete, continued with the Uretiti transects measured in March. Eleven sites have been monitored this year and the data can be found on the [Coastal Monitoring Database](#). The only remaining site to be surveyed this year is Waipū Cove which will be measured in May with Renew School who helped set up this site last year.

NRC Biodiversity and Natural Resources staff, Patuhareke Te Taiao Environment Unit and volunteers from Bream Bay Coastal Care Trust, met in March to check the lizard shelters which were placed in the dunes at Ruakākā and Waipū Cove late last year. Native copper and shore skinks were present, as well as exotic plague skinks. Several katipō spiders were also found in the shelters. A permit was obtained to allow us to catch, handle and release lizards for the purpose of identification.



*Shore skink found in shelter in Ruakākā dunes*



## **Wetlands**

Wetland Condition Index (WCI) monitoring of approximately 30 wetlands is continuing, with a further four properties visited this month and results and recommendation letters sent to landowners.

## **Terrestrial**

An interim report on the biodiversity values of council's Mount Tiger Plantation Forest (also known as Taika) was presented to the Property and Investments Committee. The survey covered vegetation, fauna, stream and culvert and pest surveys and involved ground survey, spotlighting for lizards and installation of listening devices for kiwi and bats. Staff from several teams alongside a mana whenua representative assisted. Taika contains five native forest enclaves totaling 160ha and two wetlands, which are contiguous with large tracts of native forest on neighboring properties, some of which are under the care of Kiwi Coast. A fuller biodiversity plan with recommendations will be completed in May.

The forest was found to be home to many rare species including long-tailed bats, kiwi, kaka, elegant gecko, long-finned eel, velvet worm and many nationally and regionally threatened plant species. Five out of seven stream sites surveyed have good water quality and high macro-invertebrate scores. A survey of the six culverts found that four require minor improvements to allow fish passage. Weeds and pests were recorded, and recommendations will be made around management of these in the final report, especially to prevent the spread of some environmental weeds which are still in the initial stages of invasion. The forest is closed to the public, but the survey team saw widespread evidence of recreational use including established bike and tracks through kauri areas, which is of concern because of the risk of kauri disease spread.

## **Mt Tiger Survey / Biodiversity plan**

Working from home enabled the field programme to go ahead without distractions. which was a positive outcome. Staff stayed connected and motivated with a common purpose and sharing of knowledge in the field increased capability across this and other teams. A positive outcome for our staff and their wellbeing.

## **NATURAL RESOURCES**

### **Water Quality Operations**

- All routine monitoring programmes were completed, despite significant disruptions relating to COVID-19 and current staff shortages. All samples were required to be delivered to Wellsford or Auckland due to courier reliability issues.
- Saltwater wedge site scoping visits were undertaken as part of a wider inanga spawning project led by Mountains to Sea Trust. Multiple surveys will be undertaken at each site over the coming months.

### **Natural Resources Science**

#### **Air quality and carbon emission**

- A report titled "Whangārei and Kaitāia Airshed Investigation: Phase 2 – Target Locations for Air Quality Monitoring Sites" from Pattle Delamore Partners (PDP) has been received. The main objective of this report was to identify potential hotspots suitable for NESAQ PM<sub>10</sub> and PM<sub>2.5</sub> monitoring within the Whangārei and Kaitāia airsheds. The report recommended possible monitoring locations based on factors such as the density of solid fuel home heating devices, topography of the area, wintertime meteorology, emission from industry and traffic and dispersion modelling (Whangārei airshed only). Recommended monitoring locations are;
- For the Kaitāia airshed, approximately 200 meters northwest from the NRC office in Kaitāia.
- For Whangārei, anywhere most central location within Whangārei airshed. The reason behind this is in the wintertime low wind speed occurs in similar frequency from all directions. Mairtown

is recommended as a priority because council already has a monitor there and data for last two years can be utilised for future data analysis.

- Tikipunga south and Morningside are also suitable locations as the model predicted high PM<sub>10</sub> and PM<sub>2.5</sub> concentration in these locations.

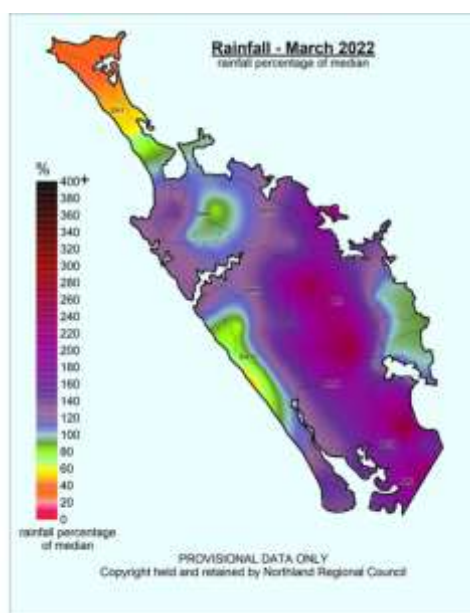
### Freshwater quality

- The NEMS (National Environmental and Monitoring Standards) for planktonic cyanobacteria sampling protocol is being developed. The NEMS planktonic cyanobacteria protocol will mainly focus on lakes and rivers to assist in implementing the NPS-FM attributes related to cyanobacteria. The first draft of this NEMS protocol (NIWA Algae expert Karl Safi as lead technical writer) is currently being reviewed by the NEMS working group.
- Feedback has been provided, together with the Policy and Planning team, to the draft MfE Guidelines for Freshwater Accounting Framework. The report is an update to the MfE 2015 guidance document for the design, preparation and operation of an integrated freshwater quality and quantity accounting system to give effect to the NPS-FM (2020) requirements and Te Mana o te Wai.

### Hydrology

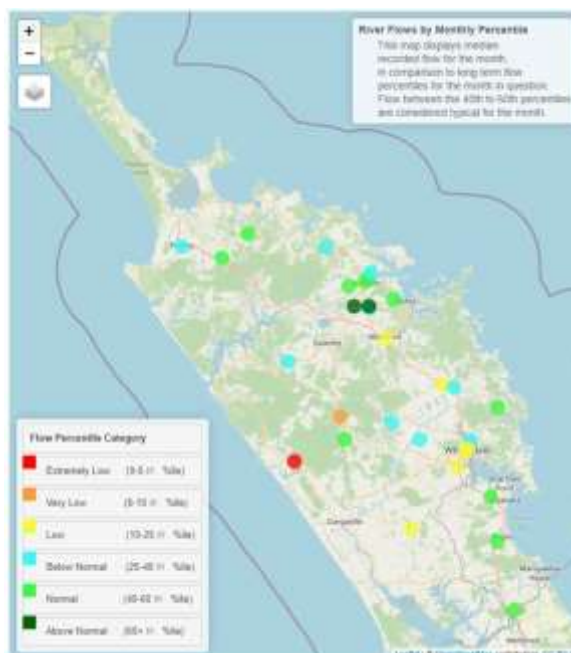
#### Rainfall

- A wet month for the bulk of the region, particularly those areas impacted by the thunderstorm activity on 21 March. Rainfall intensity during this weather event was extreme, with records broken for 1 hour rainfall intensity in Northland (123.2mm at NIWA Maungatāpere gauge, and 112mm at NRC Waihoi at Brynderwyn Gauge).



### Rivers

- Median flow for the month of March was “Normal” to “Below Normal” at most recorders. Median flow through the month at the Kaihu River on the west was “Extremely Low” as this area has been sheltered from North Easterly weather events.



### Groundwater

"Normal" to "Above Normal" throughout the region.

## POLICY AND PLANNING

### Freshwater Plan Change

- The Tangata Whenua Water Advisory Group met on 18 March. The group continued to move ahead with its workplan and agreed the scope of work for a Request for Proposals (RFP) for consultancy services to support the group to develop its recommendations and plan content for Māori freshwater values. Tenders closed on 4 April and the selection process is underway.
- The Primary Sector Liaison Group meet on 15 March 2022. A presentation was given on the GIS FMU viewer river water quality data and on NRC's Freshwater Plan Change Framework. The PSLG are continuing to provide feedback on the framework.
- An external review of NRC's Freshwater programme has been completed. Awaiting feedback from the review panel. Once received, a workshop will be scheduled to discuss panel recommendations.
- Staff participated in Te Paatu ki Kauhanga Trust's stakeholder wananga for their hapu-based freshwater project funded by MfE under Te Mana o Te Wai. The Peria hapū river project provides opportunities for council to support the hapū including in the planning and policy space, to learn lessons from the project that can help inform the freshwater plan change, and that might provide a model for other hapū, complementary to other iwi and hapū Te Mana o Te Wai projects funded in Te Taitokerau.

### Proposed Regional Plan Appeals

- Topic 16 (Livestock exclusion) - decision released 11 February 2022. Next step is for council to circulate final wording of provisions to all appeal parties and for finalised wording to be submitted to the Court for a final decision.
- Topic 14 (Marine protected areas / Fishing controls) - this topic is still awaiting the Court decision following the August 2021 hearing. In the interim, the Court has directed parties to continue to work towards resolving outstanding matters and report the outcome of 'substantive discussion'. On 29 March the Minister for Oceans and Fisheries, as part of periodic fishery review, announced indefinite closure of the recreational and commercial scallop fishing starting 1 April and extending from Ahipara to Cape Rodney (SCA1 Scallop fishery). This includes areas in the Bay of

Islands where marine protection is sought under Topic 14 to protect sensitive benthic habitats from bottom contact fishing disturbance (including scallop dredging). A tikanga led process, including hui and wānanga in March and another planned in April. Some commercial fishing (including rock lobster and trawling) has voluntarily ceased, to reduce fishing pressure during this continued process.

- Topic 15 (Mangroves) - following the November 2021 High Court decision that the NES-F applies to “natural wetlands” in the Coastal Marine Area (CMA), Council and other parties reported their updated positions to the Environment Court on 18 February. The court has scheduled a 2-day hearing 4-5 May for legal submissions, so that the hearing can be closed, and a judgement made.
- Topic 17 (Outstanding Natural Landscapes (ONLs) in the CMA - the Court has approved council’s proposed process for undertaking the mapping of ONLs in the CMA which was submitted at the end of last year. Council has sought proposals from potential consultants to assist with facilitation of tangata whenua input to the process.
- Other matters - there are several other minor appeal points that staff continue to work towards resolution with parties. We reported progress on appeals to the Court on 17 March, and the next reporting date is 29 April.

### **Wetland Mapping Project**

As previously reported, this project will comprehensively map wetlands in Northland and help implement the government’s freshwater reforms.

The development of an engagement plan and contract finalization continues. Papers providing updates and seeking feedback will continue to TTMAC and Planning and Regulatory Working Party meetings.

### **Ministry for the Environment Consultation - Transforming Recycling**

The Ministry for the Environment is consulting on proposed amendments to how waste is collected and recycled in New Zealand. The proposal has three key elements:

- Part 1: Container Return Scheme
- Part 2: Improvements to household kerbside recycling
- Part 3: Separation of business food waste

These three proposals are part of a long-term shift toward a circular economy, where packaging is made of materials that maintain their value and are easier to recycle. Greater quantities and cleaner streams of material will be recovered for recycling.

While NRC has submitted on other aspects of the Governments waste reforms, this proposal largely falls within the duties and functions of district councils. Staff have recommended that NRC do not provide feedback on the Transforming Recycling discussion document.

Consultation closes 8 May 2022.

### **Submission on Sand Mining Resource Consents at Pakiri**

No formal advice of a hearing date has been received. Indications are it will be sometime in June.

## **8.3.6 BIOSECURITY**

---

### **WILD ANIMAL CONTROL**

#### **Feral deer**

- *Manganui river margins:* Contractors working in the Manganui River area found and destroyed two large hinds on a property on Webb road.
- *Unauthorised deer farm:* An old farm that had been left with six deer upon change of ownership had been found with an estimated 30 deer which have bred from the remaining stock. The landowner was given four weeks to destock and has to date removed 21 animals. Contractors

have now removed the majority of animals remaining with an estimated three left. These will be hunted in the coming weeks.

- A letter requesting the Director General of DOC respond to councils request for powers under the wild animal control act to be delegated to council officers was sent and staff are awaiting a reply. These powers will greatly enhance council officers' ability to cull feral deer on private land where landowners refuse entry.

## FRESHWATER

### Check, Clean, Dry (CCD) advocacy programme

Events were attended as part of the summer advocacy programme included:

- *Kai Iwi Lakes Open Day, 19 March:* The Check, Clean, Dry advocate (In collaboration with Whitebait Connections and Experiencing Marine Reserves) ran a stall promoting freshwater hygiene. Activities included conducting a survey (with a prezzy card prize draw as incentive) and the provision of collateral. The stall attracted a large crowd.
- *Parihaka Trail Run, Whangārei Falls, 27 March:* New combined messaging involving awareness of *Phytophthora agathidicida* and Check, Clean, Dry was designed in collaboration with the council Marketing and Engagement team. This material was sent to participants encouraging them to arrive with clean footwear. The use of sterigene mats and footwear detergent was also encouraged at the event.



*A prezzy card prize draw was used to encourage participation in the Check, Clean, Dry survey at the Kai Iwi Lakes Open Day.*

### Freshwater pest fish surveillance monitoring workshop

Council and the Department of Conservation staff were involved in delivery of a week long pest fish surveillance monitoring workshop. The workshop taught both theory and practical aspects of pest fishing to Department of Conservation and Kaitiaki Rangers.



*Netting technique at the pest fish surveillance workshop.*

## PARTNERSHIPS

### Northland Regional Council – Kiwi Coast partnership

- *Kiwi surveys and monitoring:* The Far North Co-ordinator and her kiwi dog Yagi have been assisting Northland projects with kiwi surveys and monitoring. Projects supported in March included Pukenui, Tutukaka, Kerikeri Peninsula, and Purerua Peninsula.
- *Kiwi chick rescue:* Specialised assistance has been provided with the rescue, rehabilitation, and release of injured kiwi chicks – the full story can be found here: <https://kiwicoast.org.nz/northland-kiwi-chicks-2nd-batch-report/>
- Kiwi Coast are proud to work with council to establish the Kiwi Coast Outstanding Group or Project Award as part of the 2022 Northland Regional Council Environmental Awards.

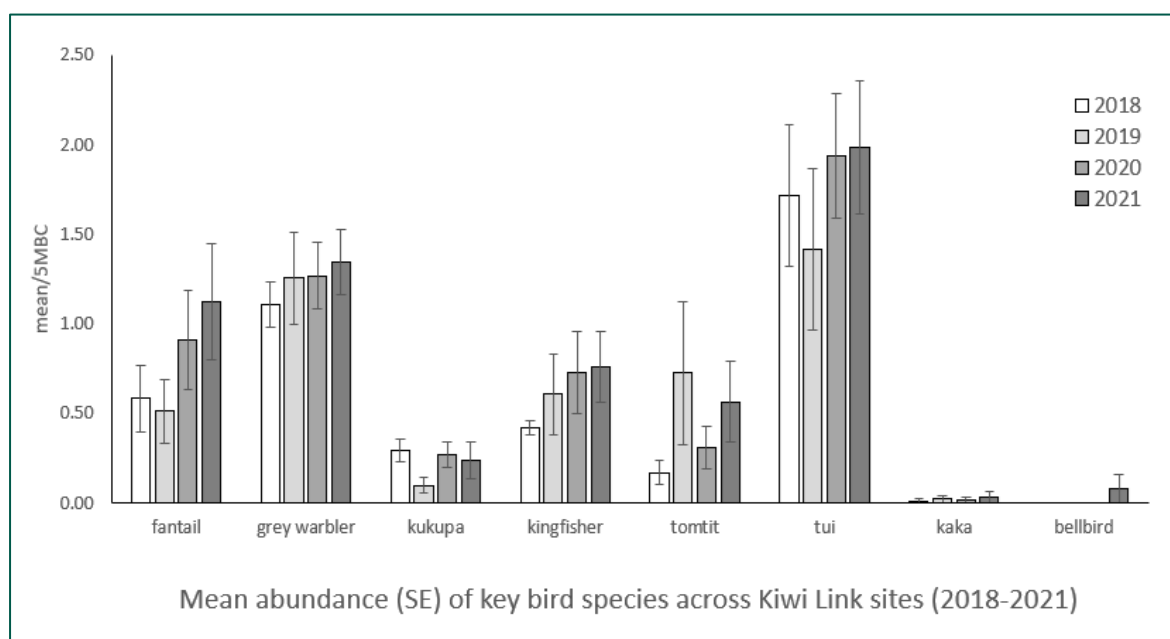


Yagi the kiwi dog.

### Kiwi Link High Value Area

NorthTec analysis of the 2021 Five Minute Bird Count data has been completed with pleasing results. The mean species richness per site has increased from  $2.67 \pm 0.35$  in 2018 to  $3.58 \pm 0.34$  in 2021. An extract from the official summary is given below:

*“It is pleasing to see the upward trend in bird abundance continue for the Kiwi Link project. Remarkably, there has been an increase in the mean number of species detected each year since counts began in 2018. Of particular note is the recording of bellbird for the first time during the Kiwi Link Five Minute Bird Counts by Harris Rd Landcare, who also recorded kākā in their area for the first time. Together these results suggest the hard work by the communities in controlling pests is achieving the desired results of not only increased birdsong, but an increase in bird species. Further monitoring will hopefully continue to demonstrate these upward trends.”*



2021 Five Minute Bird Count data in Kiwi Link High Value Area



### Whangārei Heads High Value Area

- *Kiwi chick saved by local family:* Another kiwi chick rescue, this time in McLeod Bay when a local family found a chick near the road. They called for assistance and the chick was found to have a heavy tick load. He was treated, and later released back into a specially dug burrow.

*Meka, the kiwi chick rescued from the roadside by a McLeod Bay family.*



- *Weed control:* After four days a moth plant skip bin provided at the Pārua Bay Community Centre was a quarter full, taking thousands of pods out of the ecosystem.

*Moth plant pods collected in the Pārua Bay Community Centre skip bin..*



### Piroa Brynderwyn High Value Area

The high value area has launched a website [www.pbl.org.nz/](http://www.pbl.org.nz/). The new website and the trust's Facebook page are proving useful in attracting more volunteers to the project.

### Western Northland

The Opara-Wharekawa Kiwi Protection Community Pest Control Area has been signed off for five years of funding. The Opara-Wharekawa peninsula is home to a remnant population of Northland brown kiwi, one of the last functioning kiwi populations on the Hokianga harbour. Mustelid trapping has been occurring at the end of the peninsula by the residents of the Opara Ecological Estate subdivision and this has provided important protection to kiwi within that area. However, kiwi are also present outside of the subdivision area and residents of the wider Opara-Wharekawa peninsula are passionate about establishing a trapping network and maintaining good dog control so that kiwi are protected across the landscape so that their numbers can increase.

### Mid North High Value Area

- *Community support:* The number of groups continues to grow with 50 now operating in the high value area (up from just 23 groups four years ago).
- *Positive feedback from Department of Conservation, Bay of Islands:* A letter has been received from the Bay of Islands' Operations Manager recognising the work of the Mid North Kiwi Coast to help save the North Island brown kiwi. The group's efforts have resulted in significantly improving the threat status from "At Risk – Declining" to "Not Threatened".
- *Pest Free Purerua:* The programme is on track and delivering to its Jobs for Nature key performance indicators. Trappers are working over the majority of properties from Kāpiro to Purerua (16,000 ha) checking >2,200 traps (plus bait stations) every two weeks. The offshore Purerua Islands have had four rounds of checks with rats the main pest found. The islands contain grey faced petrel, little blue penguins, and flax snails.

- *Goat cull:* A helicopter goat cull has removed over 200 feral goats. During the operation, the crew observed ten kiwi from the craft.

### **Pest Free Peninsulas Hukatere Community Pest Control Area**

A plan for the Pest Free Peninsulas Hukatere Community Pest Control Area has been completed with NRC's Dargaville staff facilitating. This 2000 ha area includes 18 lifestyle properties and nine farms at Matakohē and the Tinopai Peninsula, including a 39 ha coastal bush and a 1 ha of bush at the Kauri Museum.

### **PREDATOR FREE**

#### **Predator Free Whangārei**

- *Live capture trials:* Council approval was obtained to proceed with the next phase of the programme and begin possum removal at scale. After sending communications to the community, trial of leghold live capture traps has begun and has already successfully caught two possums.
- *GIS application:* A new GIS application has been developed for the field team which will show device type and status in real time (rather than overnight).
- *Live capture hub:* The final live capture hub has been installed at Reotahi maunga.

#### **Predator Free Pēwhairangi Whānui (Bay of Islands)**

Eradication plans for the three peninsula (Rākaumangamanga, Russell and Purerua) are all at draft stage now and are being critiqued by the land care groups and mana whenua.

More work has occurred bringing mana whenua and the existing land care groups together to work through what effective partnering will involve.

### **MARINE BIOSECURITY**

#### **Hull surveillance**

Between 4 March and 8 April, the Hull Surveillance Programme surveyed 109 vessels. Unfavourable marine weather conditions over this period resulted in reduced vessel traffic with marinas reporting movements in/out of their facilities being quiet. Contractors surveyed 3 vessels on anchor over this period, all had clean hulls that were compliant with the Marine Pathway Plan. There was one incident of *Sabella spallanzanii* (Mediterranean fanworm), two incidents of *Styela clava* (clubbed tunicate) and eight incidents of *Eudistoma elongatum* (Australian droplet tunicate) found on vessel hulls. With exception of the single incident of Mediterranean fanworm these detections were in harbours where these species are already known to have established populations. Marine biosecurity staff work with these vessel owners to ensure that these species are not spread further. One vessel was detected with one juvenile Mediterranean fanworm in Tutukaka harbour (which has no known infestation). However, the risk this posed to the surrounding environment, is negligible and the individual fanworm was treated via diver removal, the vessel owner informed, and warned to be extra vigilant in the future.



**Table 1: Hull Surveillance Programme Results to 6 April 2022**

2021/2022 Hull Surveillance Programme Results	Total this month	Total YTD
Pathways Plan Compliance		
Number of vessels surveyed this month	109	1,520
% Pathways Plan Compliance (all vessels) *	53.3	53.6
Vessels found with Marine Pests		
<i>Sabella spallanzanii</i> (fanworm)	1	41
<i>Styela clava</i> (clubbed tunicate)	2	45
<i>Undaria pinnatifida</i> (Japanese kelp)	0	0
<i>Eudistoma elongatum</i> (Australian droplet tunicate)	8	28
<i>Pyura doppelgangera</i> (sea squirt)	0	0

\* This is the percentage of vessels surveyed that complied with the acceptable level of 'light fouling' as defined in the Marine Pathway Plan. Note, actual compliance is higher given these vessels are not moving from one designated place to another.

### Experiencing Marine Reserves community snorkel days

The final council sponsored snorkel day was held on 12 March at Maunganui / Deep Water Cove with 30 participants and Experiencing Marine Reserves staff attending. Participants commented on the “epic” diversity of the species present, protected by a rāhui implemented by Ngāti Kuta and Patukeha ki Te Rāwhiti since 2009. This event was a great way to complete the contract between council and Experiencing Marine Reserves, with over 300 participants attended five events supported by Marine biosecurity staff. Both parties agree that this was a highly successful partnership and hope to continue working together in the future.



Participants of the annual Maunganui / Deep Water Cove snorkel day hosted by Experiencing Marine Reserves and Fish Forever (with support by council).

### Mediterranean fanworm dissection at Whangarei Girls High School

Staff from marine biosecurity visited two classes of year 11 students studying marine and forensic science at Whangarei Girls High School this month. Students and staff participated in the dissection of Mediterranean fanworm (*Sabella spallanzanii*) to evaluate the reproductive development of the fanworms. These sessions have become a regular occurrence for this class and was said to be one of the highlights for students.

### Charybdis Trapping in Ngunguru

Marine biosecurity staff have been working with representatives from the haukāinga of Te Waiariki on a pilot study for trapping *Charybdis japonica* (Asian paddle crab) in the Ngunguru estuary. Local children attending Ngunguru School plan to get involved in the trapping efforts in term two this year. The project will use traditional trapping methods coupled with newer eDNA monitoring tools to verify efforts and monitor the health of their taonga. This project aims to empower the community to manage this pest species within their local environment.

## PEST PLANTS

### Community weed action

- *Mt Taika weed survey*: This survey (part of biodiversity monitoring of the area for ongoing management) continues to find more species and sites.
- *March event – Ngunguru Ford Road Landcare*: A team of seven weed warriors from Kiwi Link and S.W.A.T Tutukaka (Specialist Weed Assistance) helped Ngunguru Ford Road Landcare tackle wild ginger spreading from through the Ngunguru River Scenic Reserve. Large areas of infestation were treated.



*Volunteers at the March event in  
Ngunguru River Scenic Reserve*



*Wild ginger spreading through the reserve  
was the primary focus on the event.*

### Eradication Plants

- *Firethorn*: This eradication plant has been in fruit this month, so has been easy to identify from the road. Five potential sites were identified, three were confirmed as firethorn incursions, one a misidentification upon closer examination, and one still to be investigated.
- *Batwing passionflower*: Whangaroa search and control has resumed with all residential properties in the initial search area completed. Large adult plants have been found further north than before by about 300 m. The Department of Conservation reserve search is now getting underway.
- *Evergreen buckthorn*: Searches of Sandy Bay have turned up less plants than previously. Planning is now underway for a survey further up the coast.



*A large batwing passionflower plant found growing out  
a conservatory window in a Whangaroa residence.*

### Progressive containment plants

- *Manchurian wild rice*: After a busy month treating Manchurian wild rice, contractors have finished the first round of treatment of land based sites. Treatment has now started on aquatic sites.
- *Pultenaea*: Contractors have completed works at Maranui and other bush blocks. Ongoing maintenance is required with a seed bank present.

- *Mile-a-minute*: A mail out at Baylys Beach had resulted in five new potential sites being reported.

### Sustained control plants

Staff continue to work through numerous requests for advice around control and enforcement of boundary rules.

## 8.3.7 GOVERNANCE AND ENGAGEMENT

### MĀORI ENGAGEMENT

#### Highlights

- Koha Policy has been reviewed and endorsed by the Executive Leadership Team. Thanks to combined support of the staff involved.
- 'Tū I Te Ora' Scholarship grants were offered by NRC. Applications were shortlisted to 15, and this month 8 scholarships in total were given to people undertaking study across the environmental field. 4 of these were specifically to Māori from Te Taitokerau
- Follow-up visit was successful with a return to Tuhirangi Marae, Waimā. Tohunga/Mātauranga Māori expert Rereata Makiha has relayed feedback as to the professional manner of the team, how helpful the information has been so far and is looking forward to the next steps to consider how to protect sacred sites and communities from further flooding impacts.
- Continuation of current relations from previous Month - Ngāti Toro, Te Parawhau, Ngāti Torehina, Ngāti Kuta are in progress to develop their IHEMPs and future applications.
- The team is currently developing a presentation for staff that outline the work in key areas such as Te Whāriki (people) IHEMP (processes) and the Treaty Health-check (platforms). These engagements will support and inform suitable guidance within the work across the organization
- The Omicron outbreak has driven the need to adapt and review the current delivery of The Te Whāriki training. Hence the reason we have engaged the services of Moea Armstrong to deliver an online Te Tiriti workshop.
- The team are involved with planning and guiding the official opening of the new Kaipara Service Centre building this month. Work includes liaising with and being guided by local Iwi and Hapu leaders. Actions include confirm steps of tikanga for ceremony process. Establish who will deliver the meaning of the newly carved pari, supports for Chair and CE for their respected speeches and work with the property and communications team to confirm and design the invitations.
- The GIS Mapping project is progressing well, and Dianne Zucchetto has created a Māori Engagement Contacts Tool. The tool currently contains only iwi areas of interest, marae and indicative hapu. We will build on it to add the iHEMPs and IRIS contacts.

### ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

#### Investment and Growth Reserve – Projects Report

Project	Update	Future developments/ reporting
REL	REL put into liquidation by IRD. This has no impact on council's position which is with Maher Jammal and not the company. Repayment proposal being prepared by Jammal's lawyers.	Expect to receive document early April.
Extension 350	Participated in evaluation group meeting. Quarter 3 invoice paid.	

### Other Work Undertaken

- **Joint Regional Economic Development Committee (JREDC)** – The Joint Committee meeting and quarterly workshop with Northland Inc took place on 11 March. Items on the agenda included Northland Inc's draft SOI 2022-25, discussion on regional reach, and the preparation of the economic development strategy.
- **TTMAC Working Party Economic Development Workshop** – worked with the Māori engagement team on the agenda for the Workshop which will take place on 14 April.
- **Northland Economic Quarterly (NEQ)** – March issue prepared, distributed and available online at <https://www.nrc.govt.nz/media/01snxsdf/economic-quarterly-issue-33-march-2022.pdf>. The annual section reports on economic growth data for the year ended March 2021 while the spotlight section examines some of the impacts of the latest Covid-19 restrictions on Northland's economy. The NEQ is available through council's eNewsletter service, sign-up at: [www.nrc.govt.nz/enewsletters](http://www.nrc.govt.nz/enewsletters)
- **Regional Projects Reserve** – An updated draft of the criteria and procedures for the allocation of funding from this Reserve was presented to council workshop.
- **Te Tai Tokerau Water Trust (TTWT)** – The Trust updated council on the work that has been completed and / or is in progress, timelines for completion and opportunities for support.
- **KiwiRail** – Organised meeting between Kiwirail, NRC, Northland Inc and WDC to discuss the detailed business case being prepared for the Marsden Point rail spur and an update on the Kauri to Otiria line. The update was followed by a presentation delivered by KiwiRail to the Northland Strategic Planning Workshop on 29 March.
- **CLUES scenarios and costings** – Delivered a presentation to council on the costing analysis conducted on the freshwater management mitigation options modelled by NIWA.

### ONLINE CHANNELS

**Most popular content:** A video by Auckland Blues and Northland Taniwha rugby player Tom Robinson made for the Maritime - Nobody's stronger than Tangaroa campaign. The video was posted to Tom's Instagram and our Facebook and Instagram. Through organic sharing and paid advertising, the video reached 34,567 people, received 27,315 views, and was engaged with 1,377 times. This was the first time we worked alongside a social media 'influencer', and it was great to get such a positive result. Check out the video [here](#).

*\*Engaged – number of people who 'reacted', commented, or shared the post*

Key Performance Indicators	Nov-21	Dec-21	Jan-22	Feb-22	Mar-22
<b>WEB</b>					
# Visits to the NRC website	33,100	34,526	41,600	34,400	35,900
E-payments made	20	18	7	16	14
# subscription customers (cumulative)	1,273	NA*	1,263	1,385	1,378



Key Performance Indicators	Nov-21	Dec-21	Jan-22	Feb-22	Mar-22
<b>SOCIAL MEDIA (cumulative)</b>					
# Twitter followers	1,564	1,564	1,567	1,566	1,564
# NRC Facebook fans	10,507	10,469	10,510	10,600	10,600
# NRC Overall Facebook Reach	57,300	244,777	157,700	207,200	189,900
# NRC Engaged Daily Users	2,093	4,821	2,755	4,807	8,442
# CDEM Facebook fans	25,800	26,120	26,117	26,200	26,300
# CDEM Overall Facebook Reach	236,900	NA*	214,100	171,100	103,300
# CDEM Engaged Daily Users	30,600	NA*	26,600	19,500	5,564
# Instagram followers	1,450	NA*	1,488	1,506	1,520

NOTES: \*NA – Data not available due to Christmas break.

## ENVIROSCHOOLS / EDUCATION

### WaiFencing skills course held

On 10 and 11 March, Enviroschools WaiFencing courses were held on Donagh Farm, near Waitotira. Due to Covid protocols, we ran a rolling-schools event where students attended in separate school groups at different times of the day. Schools able to participate included: Dargaville High, Renew School, Tauraroa Area School and Whangarei Boys' High. Land Management provided a presentation on why fencing off waterways is important and CanTrain NZ tutors taught skills in fence construction, temporary electrics, repairs and tool identification and maintenance.

### Enviroschools projects

Ruawai College has embarked on a long-term project regarding the water quality of the Northern Wairoa River and the Kaipara Harbour, and surrounding land use. The school has linked up with local farmers and the Kaipara Moana Remediation programme.

Totara North School students are deepening their understanding of the interconnectedness of humans and the environment by creating a biodiversity timeline, including species introductions and local history.

### Enviroschools communities facilitated

Despite Covid-19, during March Enviroschools Facilitators safely held specific interactions with 56 school and early childhood communities.

## COMMUNITY ENGAGEMENT

### Scholarships

Judging took place at the end of March with a panel consisting of the Community Engagement Manager, Kai Arahi Tikanga Māori, the Eastern Coast Land Manager and Janelle Beazley. The panel were impressed by the range of applications and are currently in the final stage of selection stages. All applicants will be contacted within the next few weeks to learn the outcome of their application. Once announced, you can find out more about the recipients [here](#).

### Environmental awards

Promotion continues for our environmental awards. This year we have introduced a new category: youth environmental leader and have partnered with Kiwi Coast to offer a special award for an outstanding group or project. The deadline for entries has been extended to 20 April.

### Annual plan consultation

Our annual plan consultation is being supported by a social media campaign as well as print ads and EDMs to stakeholders.

### Citylink Whangārei Facebook page

The Community Engagement team supported the Transport team in launching the Citylink Whangārei Facebook page. This was launched on March 26th and as of April 8th now has 146 followers.

### Communications

Communications issued in March included our quarterly e-newsletter and newspaper spread, [Our Northland](#), our [From Hill to Harbour e-newsletter](#), the TTMAC pānui, [Ngā karere o Taitokerau](#) as well as 4 media releases covering the following topics:

- Heads up of tsunami testing
- Annual plan consultation
- Half price bus trips
- Extension to deadline for environmental awards

### LOCAL GOVERNMENT OFFICIAL INFORMATION (LGOIMA) REQUESTS

Total LGOIMAs	March 2020 to April 2021	March 2021 to April 2022
	17	11
Number of LGOIMAs not responded to within 20 working days		0

### CUSTOMER SERVICES

#### Telephone inbound call statistics & enquiries

	Jan 2022	Feb 2022	Mar 2022
Call volume via Customer Services	2049	2003	2254
Average wait time	5.2 secs	5.1 secs	7.6 secs

Customer service calls have increased in number. The greatest volume of calls have been for biosecurity, maritime and consents.

	1 July 2018 – 30 June 2019	1 July 2019 – 30 June 2020	1 July 2020 – 30 June 2021
Call volume via Customer Services	20812	30566	31130

This is the call volume over the last three years using our 3CX system.

#### Mailroom email processing performance

Following a period of decreased activity during the summer period, the inwards mail has increased again.

	Jan 2022	Feb 2022	Mar 2022
Mail processed	679	683	851

#### Satisfaction monitoring

All complaints were attended to.

### Feedback cards, compliments, and complaints

Complaints received	Total
March 2022	
Service provided by a specific person/people	
• City Link buses	1
• Hydrology	1
• Total Mobility	1
<b>Total complaints recorded</b>	<b>3</b>

### 8.3.8 COMMUNITY RESILIENCE

#### TRANSPORT

##### REGIONAL TRANSPORT PLANNING

Waka Kotahi continues to advise all councils that the limited amount of national funding assistance for approved programmes and projects that are included in the National Land Transport Programme (NLTP) remains a serious concern. With the continuation of COVID-19 related restrictions, which resulted in reduced travel, funding sourced from Fuel Excise Tax and Road User Charges may potentially be insufficient to cover transport related infrastructure and service requirements. The Regional Transport Committee held its first workshop followed by the full committee meeting on 5 April 2022. The workshop enabled open discussion of relevant topics, and the format of the workshop followed by the meeting of the committee will continue moving forward. These meetings were followed by the Joint WDC - NRC Public Transport Working Party and updates were provided on the NRC CityLink, Bream Bay Link and Hikurangi Link bus services and WDC bus infrastructure and planned projects.

##### PASSENGER TRANSPORT ADMINISTRATION

\*BusLink figures are reported one month in arrears, due to the required information being unavailable at the time of the agenda deadline.

Bus Link stats for February 2022 (revenue ex GST)	Actual	Budget	Variance	Year/Date Actual	Year/Date Budgeted	Variance
CityLink Passengers	25,248	26,429	-1,181	174,589	208,666	34,077
CityLink Revenue	\$30,872	\$34,093	-\$3,221	\$222,598	\$269,179	\$46,581
Mid North Link Passengers	165	144	21	1,103	1,248	-145
Mid North Link Revenue	\$591	\$720	-\$129	\$3,336	\$6,240	-\$2,904
Hokianga Link Passengers	93	72	21	594	618	-24
Hokianga Link Revenue	\$477	\$501	-\$24	\$3,239	\$4,299	\$1,060

Bus Link stats for February 2022 (revenue ex GST)	Actual	Budget	Variance	Year/Date Actual	Year/Date Budgeted	Variance
Far North Link Passengers	229	368	-139	1,797	2,999	-1,202
Far North Link Revenue	\$481	\$931	-\$450	\$4,469	\$7,587	-\$ 3,118
Bream Bay Link Passengers	27	24	3	336	204	132
Bream Bay Link Revenue	\$204	\$86	\$118	\$2,187	\$734	\$1,453
Hikurangi Link Passengers	22	24	-2	163	192	-29
Hikurangi Link Revenue	\$57	\$63	-\$6	\$383	\$532	-149

Please note that the Actual Farebox Revenue depicted in the above table, does not include the national subsidy paid out for loss of farebox revenue due to COVID-19. This subsidy is calculated by deducting actual passengers carried from passenger numbers entered in the Regional Land Transport Plan 2021/2024 funding application. This difference is then multiplied by fares charged. Both the Mid NorthLink and Hokianga Link Services show a positive variance to budget for passengers carried and a negative variance to budget for farebox revenue. This is due to more SuperGold Card holders using these services at a reduced fare.

The Whangārei Heads trial service discontinued operation on 29 January 2022 due to continued low patronage.

All other services remain operating at full schedules. However, COVID-19 still is the major contributor for passenger numbers remaining low.

### National Bus Driver Shortage

This continues to be an issue in all regions. Whilst none of the NRC contracted services have been adversely affected, the planned additional services for Whangārei students have yet to commence due to a driver shortage. Staff continue to work with the operator on this matter.

### Half Price Fares

The government's 50% fare reduction initiative will commence on 1 April 2022 and run to 30 June 2022.

The following criteria are applicable:

1. Fares will be recovered based on "Actual Fares" taken. I.e., NRC take \$100 half fares, Waka Kotahi reimburse NRC the other \$100.
2. Implementation and communication costs will be covered by Waka Kotahi.
3. Funding for this initiative is provided from outside the National Land Transport Programme.

The Government has indicated that should this fare reduction prove successful by increasing the number of people on public transport, it may consider extending the time period.



Whangārei District Council announced they would offer free parking from 14 March 2022 to 25 April 2022 within the Whangārei business district, which overlaps the start of the 50% reduction in bus fares.

### Rose Street Bus Terminus Upgrade

The first phase of the Rose Street Bus Terminus upgrade commenced on 2 March 2022 and is expected to be completed by May 2022.

This work centres around upgrading the bus traffic flow, existing bus bays, installation of new shelters and pedestrian crossings. It will also allow for space to accommodate additional buses when required.

The upgrade of the existing building, which includes passenger seating, office accommodation and public toilets, is not being undertaken during this phase. The planned date for the second phase of this work is yet unknown but is included currently in year five of the Whangārei District Council Long-Term Plan.

During this phase of the upgrades, the buses are using Vine Street, which has temporary bus bays, bus stop signage and timetables installed.

### Total Mobility (TM)

\*Total Mobility Scheme figures are reported one month in arrears, due to the required information being unavailable at the time of the agenda deadline.

	Total Clients	Monthly Actual Expend	Monthly Budgeted Expend	Monthly Variance	Year/Date Actual Expend	Year/Date Budgeted Expend	Annual Variance
February 2022	1,233	\$16,372	\$25,000	-\$8,628	\$133,901	\$150,000	-\$16,099

### Total Mobility Scheme – 50% discounted fares

During March, Northland Transportation Alliance (NTA) staff were part of a national project team tasked to roll out the Government's public transport initiative of 50% discount off the client's portion of fares on the Total Mobility Scheme. This started on Friday 1 April 2022 and will run through to 30 June 2022.

The Government will be covering the discounted portion of the fare. There will be no financial risk to the Northland Regional Council.

### ROAD SAFETY UPDATE

Comparisons of road safety statistics, fatalities are lower in the period in 2022 compared to the same period in 2021.

### Road Trauma Update

Road Fatalities Statistics for the period 1 January 2021 – 5 April 2021

Fatalities Jan – April 2021	Far North	Whangārei	Kaipara	Northland	National
Local roads	1	1	1	3	51
State highways	4	1	1	6	40
TOTAL	5	2	2	9	91

#### Road Fatalities Statistics for the period 1 January 2022 – 5 April 2022

Fatalities Jan - April 2022	Far North	Whangārei	Kaipara	Northland	National
Local roads	0	1	0	1	51
State highways	2	1	2	5	42
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>93</b>

#### Motorcycle Safety - Ride Forever (R4E) Rider Training Update

- R4E – 2020/2021 – 186 riders completed the three courses
- R4E – 2021/2022 – 129 riders have completed courses to date:
  - Bronze Course – 59
  - Silver Course – 40
  - Gold Course – 30

#### Northland Road Safety Forum & Northland Freight Group Meetings Postponed

Both the Road Safety Forum and Freight Group quarterly meetings have again been postponed pending national and Northland Regional Council changes to COVID-19 rules regarding in person meetings.

#### Driver Reviver/Fatigue Stops

The northbound Driver Reviver Stop is still scheduled for Easter, **Thursday 14 April 2022** taking into consideration the COVID-19 situation at the time.

#### Waka Kotahi Road Safety Promotion/Media themes for March 2022

Road safety promotional and media related themes for March 2022 continued to concentrate around:

- Speed
- Alcohol/drugs
- Seatbelts
- Young drivers
- Motorcyclists
- Cyclists
- Fatigue and distractions

At the local level, Northland also produces radio, print and other social media messaging to promote road safety specific to Northland, and to compliment the Governments 'Road to Zero' and 'Safe System Approach' road safety initiatives.

#### EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT

The Minister for Emergency Management hosted a meeting in late March with the Northland Mayors, Chair of the NRC, and Chief Executives from each council to discuss and consider proposed changes to the Emergency Management legislation. Including clarifying roles and responsibilities of territorial authorities and CDEM Groups. This was an opportunity for good discussion and feedback on the proposal in the new bill. The Minister also indicated that the timeline for the bill has been extended by at least six months. This extension was as a direct result of feedback that raised concerns about the pace of the proposed bill and changes.

The Deputy Chief Executive of NEMA, Gary Knowles met with the FNDC Chief Executive, Blair King and the CDEM Emergency Manager in early April. The purpose of the meeting was to meet with the new FNDC CEO and establish an understanding of his CDEM expectations.

Gary Knowles also met with the CDEM Office personnel and the CEG Chair, to discuss and understand local and regional arrangements and to provide an overview of NEMA work programmes.

The CDEM group office has been advised by Radio NZ that they are decommissioning and removing the transmission site at Waipapakauri in Northland. RNZ has been working with the group to advise affected people of the change and outline how to access alternative platforms and channels.

The CDEM Group Office has been impacted by sick leave from COVID-19, other health matters and two recent resignations and at times the team has been at less than 50% of its usual work force capacity. As of 7 April, the CDEM team had three vacancies, one will be filled with the role of Welfare Specialist on 19 April, the Communications Specialist is anticipated to be filled by mid-May, and the timeline regarding filling the Response Specialists role will be slightly longer. Workload remains high with additional demands from NEMA and others on an ad hoc basis.

## **MARITIME**

### **Incidents**

There were 21 incidents logged in March, mostly illegal anchoring, speeding offences and accidents.

Two derelict abandoned vessels were removed from Whangaroa Harbour and disposed by staff. Another two were removed from Whangārei Harbour. NRC staff saved a sinking vessel in time, on a mooring by pumping out the vessel, an internal fitting had failed.

The entrance buoy to Houhora Harbour was reported out of position and relocated by the Waikare. A fishing charter vessel rolled during a storm on 20/21 March, near North Cape with tragic loss of life. Initial rescue of survivors and incident response was carried out by police and emergency services. The first attempt to salvage the wreckage was unsuccessful, when the vessel flipped whilst under tow and sank off Henderson Bay. Maritime staff, the NRC vessel Waikare and a salvage team of six divers were contracted by the insurance company to recover the vessel, which was brought ashore in Houhora. After inspection by the Transport Accident Investigation Commission and Maritime NZ the vessel was dismantled. No oil pollution resulted.

### **Shipping**

A scheduled Port and Harbour Safety Code review was postponed due to COVID-19, as was the annual NZ Marine Pilots conference.

### **General**

The final design of the replacement vessel for the Waikare has commenced. Key aspects will be a high-performance hull for optimised fuel consumption.

## RIVERS AND NATURAL HAZARDS

### RIVERS

#### Long Term Plan Projects

Rivers	Comments
Awanui	<p>Work on the Northern Floodway Benching is progressing well (40% complete). The Kaitaia Rugby Club Floodway Benching, Matthew's Park &amp; Switzer Spillway contracts are underway and currently 25% and 40% complete respectively. Expectation that some sections will be completed next earthworks season.</p> <p>Work to improve channel capacity through Primary School/A&amp;P showgrounds reach now complete with improvements to A&amp;P parking areas very well received by the A&amp;P Society.</p> <p>Quarry Road &amp; SH10 Bridges improved flow designs have been completed, but material costs and availability have slowed progress.</p> <p>Flood wall designs well underway and procurement for Milky Way expected to commence shortly. These works can be undertaken through the winter period.</p>
Otiria/Moerewa	Stage 1 work is now underway, however there is a 3-week delay because of Contractor Staff with COVID-19.
Kerikeri	Waipapa Industrial Estate Flood Mitigation project is underway approximately 25% completed.

### NATURAL HAZARDS

Work Streams	Status	Comments
Whangārei (CBD) River Catchment Flood Model	68% complete	<p>Upgrade of the hydraulic model catchment(s) including new structures, updated LiDAR (Light Detection and Ranging) and sea level rise values and recalibration. Specific river/stream structures inspections have been completed over the last month.</p> <p>Following discussions with WDC (Whangārei District Council), Ewaters (consultants on the project) will now also be engaged to include the CBD stormwater network as part of the same package (variation).</p> <p>WDC will be funding the additional costs, approximately \$90,000, related to the additional tasks. Our aim is to complete the project, including the additional tasks, before the end June 2022.</p>
Website Natural Hazards Portal	90% complete	<p>Morphum Environmental has been engaged to develop the portal with support and input from colleagues across various departments.</p> <p>The third phase of the development of the portal is ongoing, e.g., landing page, flooding and Te Ao Māori aspects, story maps, property viewer and sea level rise viewer.</p> <p>It is our vision to 'go public' by the end of June 2022. Prior to that we will be presenting this to our Councilors, and other appropriate platforms, for feedback. Simultaneously it is our intention to share this with our District Council colleagues before going live.</p>

Work Streams	Status	Comments
Raupo Drainage Scheme – Coastal Flood Hazard Analysis & Mitigation Options	80% complete	<p>We have engaged Water Technology (WT) to do detailed hydraulic modelling from all perspectives, i.e., catchment, river and most importantly coastal. The objective is to establish a detailed base model and to develop flood hazard mitigation options, particularly from a coastal perspective, and adaptation planning.</p> <p>The project team consists of NRC and KDC staff, Chair of the Drainage Committee, and the Consultants. NRC are taking the modelling analysis lead on this project, i.e., contract management (NRC Budget). KDC are collating the assets data covered under their budgets.</p> <p>Surveys, data collection, assets inspection and 'building' of the hydraulic model have been completed. First draft 'results' have been reviewed by the project team. Further analysis and 'flood event scenarios' are underway with results expected at the end of April. The project is on target to be completed by the end of June 2022.</p> <p>This project will support the pilot project under the Te Taitokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy (TTCAS) in which scoping, and planning process is underway; early engagement has commenced with KDC.</p>
Natural Hazards technical and planning support to District Councils on Plan Changes and Rules	Ongoing	<p>Following the publication of our coastal hazard maps and the regionwide flood maps, complimentary to the priority rivers flood maps, further technical, consultative, and planning support / guidance is provided to the DCs. This follows the commitments to DCs prior to the publication of the coastal hazard maps.</p>

## CLIMATE CHANGE RESPONSE

Work Streams	Status	Comments
NRC Climate Change Strategy " <i>Ngā Taumata o te Moana</i> " and Implementation Plan	Implementation Ongoing	<p>Progress is ongoing. New staff are contacting various teams within Council to discuss roles, responsibilities, work programmed and reporting as it relates to each action. We are undertaking a 'stocktake' of each of the 46 actions, aiming to build a system to drive progress and report on change.</p> <p>The next work programme update will be presented to the Climate Change Working Party meeting on 25 May 2022.</p> <p>The new Manager: Climate Change Manager started on 23 February and the new Zero Carbon Transition Advisor started full time on 4 April 2022.</p>

Work Streams	Status	Comments
Te Taitokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy (TTCAS)	Final Draft  95% complete - awaiting formal adoption from all four Councils.	Joint Strategy endorsed by JCCAC. All four Councils are aiming to formally adopt the final Strategy by end of April. FNDC adopted the Joint Strategy on 7 April. Paper for adoption of Joint Strategy by NRC is scheduled to go to council for 26 April meeting. 7.8
Te Taitokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy (TTCAS) - Programme Implementation	Implementation Ongoing	There are 46 'priority actions' listed in the Joint Strategy. Coordinating and reporting on these actions will happen through the JCCAC and CATT.  Actions 29, 30 (Coastal Adaptation Programme): Council has made funding available, up to a maximum of \$45,000 each, for the three district councils to support the undertaking of Coastal Adaptation Planning at their initial sites. Funding is made available through a business case application and comes from the NRC Climate Change budget. KDC submitted the business case for Raupo/Ruawai and was awarded the funds. WDC have also submitted a business case and have had funding approved. FNDC are not yet able to apply for funds but are working toward.
Deep South National Science Challenge (Deep South NSC) research project  Project name: <b><i>"Developing an inclusive, empowering and coordinated adaptation framework in Te Tai Tokerau – Collaborative Governance for Climate Adaptation"</i></b>  This project directly supports and is aligned with the TTCAS.	Awaiting funding decision from Deep South	Following a joint application between GNS and Climate Adaptation Te Taitokerau (CATT) \$32,640 funding was made available as 'grant in aid' to undertake engagement activities to support development of a final proposal. Those activities have not yet started.  Up to \$400K of new funding has been offered by the Deep South NSC over two years (2022-2024 FY). A fully costed final proposal is required by Deep South NSC to access the funding and has been submitted. A decision on the final quantum of funding is due 12 May.  Project, contract, reporting and financial management are all being administered by GNS Science.  The project has two key pou (1) self-directed adaptation for tangata whenua, (2) improved governance mechanisms for the delivery of adaptation actions.  This project is supported by the development of a new framework for decision-making for local government based on Te Ao Māori - sponsored by Whangārei

Work Streams	Status	Comments
		District Council (on behalf of the CATT). This project is ongoing.

#### NORTHLAND WIDE LIDAR SURVEY

Work Streams	Status	Comments
Regional LiDAR Survey	In progress	QA/QC checks complete and liaising with LiDAR contractor (RPS) and LINZ to finalise delivery and final payment within 1 <sup>st</sup> Quarter.

---

#### Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Nil

**TITLE:** **Receipt of Committee Minutes**

**From:** Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist

**Authorised by:** Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist, on 21 April 2022

---

### Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation

That the unconfirmed minutes of the:

- Te Oneroa-A-Tōhē Board - 18 February 2022
- Civil Defence Emergency Management Group Meeting Minutes - 1 March 2022
- Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee - 7 March 2022
- Joint Regional Economic Development Committee - 11 March 2022
- Audit and Risk Subcommittee – 30 March 2022
- Investment and Property Subcommittee – 30 March 2022
- Regional Transport Committee - 5 April 2022

be received.

---

### Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Attachment 1: Te Oneroa-A-Tōhē Board Minutes 18 February 2022 [↓](#) 

Attachment 2: Civil Defence Emergency Management Group Meeting Minutes 1 March 2022 [↓](#) 

Attachment 3: Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee Minutes 7 March 2022 [↓](#) 

Attachment 4: Joint Regional Economic Development Committee Minutes 11 March 2022 [↓](#) 

Attachment 5: Audit and Risk Subcommittee Minutes 30 March 2022 [↓](#) 

Attachment 6: Investment and Property Subcommittee Minutes 30 March 2022 [↓](#) 

Attachment 7: Regional Transport Committee Minutes 5 April 2022 [↓](#) 



Te Oneroa-a-Tōhe Board  
18 February 2022

## Ngā Minitī O Te Poari O Te Oneroa-A-Tōhē Te Oneroa-A-Tōhē Board Minutes

Meeting held remotely  
on Friday 18 February 2022, commencing at 10.00am

### Tuhinga (Present):

Haami Piripi	Te Rūnanga o Te Rarawa - (Chair)
Cr Mate Radich	Far North District Council - (Dep Chair)
Graeme Noho	Ngāti Kuri Trust Board
Cr Marty Robinson	NRC Councillor
Wallace Rivers	NgaiTakato

### I Tae Mai (In Attendance):

#### Huihuinga i te katoa (Full Meeting)

Auriolē Ruka	NRC - GM, Strategy, Governance & Engagement
Sheila Taylor	NRC - Kaiārahi Kaupapa Māori
Robert Nathan	NRC – Kaiārahi Tikanga Māori
Theresa Burkhardt	FNDC – Policy Planner
Bill Lee	FNDC – Policy Planner
George Riley	Te Rūnanga o Te Rarawa
Kerry Shanta	Te Araroa Northland Trust
Meloney Tupou	NRC – Kaiāwhina Tari

#### Huihuinga i te wahanga (Part Meeting)

Mayor John Carter	Far North District Council
Gary Hooper	Chief Executive - Aquaculture New Zealand
Laws Larson	Te Ohu Kaimoana

The Chair declared the meeting open at 10.20am.

### Karakia Timatanga and Whakatau

Haami Piripi/Graeme Noho

### Ngā Mahi Whakapai/Housekeeping (Item 1.0)

*This meeting will be held fully remote and attendees are responsible for their own health and safety and ensuring they are working in a safe environment*

Te Oneroa-a-Tōhe Board  
18 February 2022

### **Ngā whakapahā/Apologies (Item 2.0)**

Te Runanga Nui o Te Aupouri Trust Waitai Petera (NRC online technical and communication issues)

#### **Moved (Marty Robinson/Haami Piripi)**

That the apologies from NRC Councillor Colin Kitchen for non-attendance be received.

**Carried**

### **Nga whakapuakanga (Declarations of Conflicts of Interest)**

It was advised that members should make declarations item-by-item as the meeting progressed.

### **Confirmation of Minutes - 17 December 2021 (Item 4.1)**

Report from Meloney Tupou, Māori Governance and Engagement Support Admin

#### **Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation**

#### **Moved Graeme Noho/Marty Robinson**

That the minutes of Te Oneroa A Tōhē Board Minutes meeting held on 17 December 2021 be confirmed as true and correct record.

**Carried**

### **Meeting Schedule for 2022 (Item 5.1)**

Report from Sheila Taylor, Kaiārahi Kaupapa Māori

#### **Recommendation(s)**

#### **Moved (John Carter/Marty Robinson)**

1. That the report 'Meeting Schedule for 2022' by Sheila Taylor, Kaiārahi Kaupapa Māori and dated 26 January 2022, be received.
  - 2022 Board meetings, commencing February 2022 be held Bimonthly
  - Contingent on recommendation 2.b.i, 2.b.ii or 2.b.iii being approved, the Board set the meeting dates for 2022 to the third Friday of the month in which the Board shall meet
  - 22 April
  - 17 June
  - 19 August

**Carried**

Te Oneroa-a-Tōhe Board  
18 February 2022

## **Recommendations GLM9**

### **Moved John Carter /Graeme Neho**

1. That the Board endorses a change to the fishing year for GLM9
2. That the Board approve a letter of support:
  - a. for the change to the fishing year for Quota Management Area Green Lipped Mussel 9 (GLM9) from 1 October to 30 September to 1 April to 31 March; and
  - b. to be sent to the Minister of Fisheries and the Parliamentary Under-Secretary for Oceans and Fisheries; and
  - c. subject to the final approval of the Chair of Te Oneroa-a-Tōhe Beach Board.
3. That the Board explore the possibility of a local bill.

**Carried**

**John Carter left meeting – (10.48am) No Quorum**

---

## **Background/Tuhinga**

### **1. Progress of priority action items from Te Rautaki o Te Oneroa-a-Tōhe:**

#### **1.1 Scattering of ashes**

- Speed Limits Workshop in progress today and they are on task for June deadline.
- Scattering of ashes, letter has been distributed to the funeral providers and it will be available on the Boards website.
- It was suggested by the Board that the letter be distributed on a larger scale in order to educate people around the Kaupapa.

#### **1.2 Resource consent process**

- Resource Consent –to formalise the process. Currently have one in the works it is on hold to decide if it will be a process or a plan change

#### **1.3 Sites of significance**

- Provide GIS mapping expertise and templates to support Iwi, Hapū and whānau to identify wāhi tapu and sites of significance in the Te Oneroa-a-Tōhe Management area.
- Paper going to council in March to propose times and process for TOATB. Actioned by September time frame.

## **Te Araroa Northern Trust meeting update**

- Mark Weatherall has resigned. Matt Claridge our new Executive Director as from 1<sup>st</sup> February 2022.
- Te Araroa walkers this season are low due to Covid 19.

Te Oneroa-a-Tōhe Board  
18 February 2022

### **Sandhills Road development**

- 1000 Sandhills Limited (the Applicant) has acquired the property formally owned by Ahipara Land Company Limited. Applicant is seeking approval from the Far North District Council and Northland Regional Council.
- This paper has been prepared in advance of the applicant seeking approval from the Territorial Authorities to ensure the Te Oneroa-a-Tōhe Beach Board are aware of the upcoming lodgement.

### **Karakia Mutunga/Graeme Neho**

#### **Whakamutunga (Conclusion)**

The meeting concluded at 11.48am.

Civil Defence Emergency Management Group Meeting  
1 March 2022

## Civil Defence Emergency Management Group Meeting Minutes

Meeting held via audiovisual link  
on Tuesday 1 March 2022, commencing at 11.00am

### **Tuhinga/Present:**

Chair, NRC Councillor, Rick Stolwerk  
WDC Mayor, Sheryl Mai  
KDC Alternate Representative, Councillor Anna Curnow  
FNDC Councillor Dave Collard  
NZ Police Representative Superintendent Tony Hill  
FENZ Representative Commander Wipari Henwood  
NEMA Representative Chloe Marshall (Observer Status)

### **I Tae Mai/In Attendance:**

#### **Full Meeting**

NRC Chair, Penny Smart  
NRC Representative, Cr Colin Kitchen  
FNDC Representative, Cr Kelly Stratford  
WDC Representative, Cr Nicholas Connop  
FNDC CEO, Shaun Clarke  
NRC Group Manager - Community Resilience, Victoria Harwood  
Northland CDEM, Graeme Macdonald  
Northland CDEM, Jenny Calder  
Northland CDEM, Shona Morgan  
Northland CDEM, Tegan Capp  
Northland CDEM, Evania Arani  
Northland CDEM, Claire Nyberg  
Northland CDEM, Mana Wright  
Northland CDEM, Bill Hutchinson  
Northland CDEM, Murray Wright  
Northland CDEM, Sarah Boniface  
FNDC, Andy Finch  
NRC, Meloney Tupou

The Chair declared the meeting open at 11.07am.

### **Ngā Mahi Whakapai/Housekeeping (Item 1.0)**

### **Ngā whakapahā/Apologies (Item 2.0)**

#### **Moved (Collard / Curnow)**

That the apologies from KDC Mayor Dr Jason Smith for non-attendance be received.

**Carried**

Civil Defence Emergency Management Group Meeting  
1 March 2022

### **Nga whakapuakanga/Declarations of Conflicts of Interest (Item 3.0)**

It was advised that members should make declarations item-by-item as the meeting progressed.

### **Confirmation of Minutes - 2021 11 10 Civil Defence Emergency Management Group Meeting Minutes Unconfirmed (Item 4.1)**

**Report from Laura Exton, Community Resilience Executive Assistant**

**Moved (Collard/Curnow)**

That the minutes of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Group meeting held on Wednesday 10 November 2021 be confirmed as a true and correct record.

**Carried**

### **Receipt of Schedule of Actions (Item 4.2)**

**Report from Laura Exton, Community Resilience Executive Assistant**

**Moved (Mai/Stolwerk)**

That the Civil Defence Emergency Management Group Schedule of Actions be reviewed and receipted.

**Carried**

### **NEMA Monthly Update (Item 5.1)**

**Report from Graeme MacDonald, Emergency Manager**

**Moved (Hill/Curnow)**

That the report 'NEMA Monthly Update' by Graeme MacDonald, Emergency Manager and dated 9 February 2022, be received.

**Carried**

### **Northland CDEM Group Plan - Targets and actions (Item 5.2)**

**Report from Graeme MacDonald, Emergency Manager**

**Moved (Stolwerk/Collard)**

That the report 'Northland CDEM Group Plan - Targets and actions' by Graeme MacDonald, Emergency Manager and dated 22 February 2022, be received.

**Carried**

Civil Defence Emergency Management Group Meeting  
1 March 2022

### **Northland CDEM Group, CEG and Group appointments (Item 6.1)**

**Report from Graeme MacDonald, Emergency Manager**

**Moved (Mai/Stolwerk)**

That the report 'Northland CDEM Group, CEG and Group appointments' by Graeme MacDonald, Emergency Manager and dated 22 February 2022, be received.

**Carried**

**Secretarial note:** remove Gemma Aspden (FNDC) and Alistair Wiseman (WDC) from Local Welfare Manager position.

### **CEG Chair's Report (Item 6.2)**

**Report from Victoria Harwood, Pou Tiaki Hapori - GM Community Resilience**

**Moved (Stolwerk/Collard)**

That the report 'CEG Chair's Report' by Victoria Harwood, Pou Tiaki Hapori - GM Community Resilience Chairperson and dated 22 February 2022, be received.

**Carried**

**Secretarial note:** WDC Mayor Mai raised concern for the wellbeing of the CDEM Group Office with the volume of work and emergency responses over the last couple of years, and if the Committee could provide any further support they will where possible.

### **Northland Water Resilience (Item 6.3)**

**Report from Graeme MacDonald, Emergency Manager**

**Moved (Stolwerk/Collard)**

That the report 'Northland Water Resilience' by Graeme MacDonald, Emergency Manager and dated 22 February 2022, be received.

**Carried**

### **Tsunami activity in Northland following Hunga Tonga-Hunga Ha'apai volcanic eruption (Item 6.4)**

**Report from Murray Soljak, Emergency Management Communications Specialist**

**Moved (Curnow/Mai)**

That the report 'Tsunami activity in Northland following Hunga Tonga-Hunga Ha'apai volcanic eruption' by Murray Soljak, Emergency Management Communications Specialist and dated 22 February 2022, be received.

**Carried**

Civil Defence Emergency Management Group Meeting  
1 March 2022

### **Kaimaumu Fire Response (Item 6.5)**

**Report from Sarah Boniface, Emergency Management Specialist; Bill Hutchinson, Emergency Management Specialist and Wipari Henwood, FENZ - Northland District Manager**

#### **Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation**

That the report 'Kaimaumu Fire Response' by Sarah Boniface, Emergency Management Specialist; Bill Hutchinson, Emergency Management Specialist and Wipari Henwood, FENZ - Northland District Manager and dated 22 February 2022, be received.

### **Northland Multi-Agency Coordination Centre update (Item 6.6)**

**Report from Graeme MacDonald, Emergency Manager**

#### **Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation**

That the report 'Northland Multi-Agency Coordination Centre update' by Graeme MacDonald, Emergency Manager and dated 22 February 2022, be received.

### **Whakamutunga (Conclusion)**

The meeting concluded at 12.07pm.



Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee  
7 March 2022

## Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee Minutes

Meeting held in the Remotely via Zoom link  
on Monday 7 March 2022, commencing at 1.00pm

### Tuhinga/Present:

Chairperson, NRC Councillor, Councillor Amy Macdonald  
Deputy Chairperson, Whangārei and Te Karearea Representative,  
Delaraine Armstrong  
FNDC Councillor David Clendon  
Te Uri o Hau and Te Roroa Representative Fiona Kemp  
WDC Councillor Anna Murphy  
KDC Mayor Jason Smith

### I Tae Mai/In Attendance:

#### Full Meeting

NRC Natural Hazards Advisor, Jan van der Vliet  
NRC Group Manager - Community Resilience, Victoria Harwood  
NRC Strategic Policy Specialist, Justin Murfitt  
NRC Climate Change Manager, Tom FitzGerald  
NRC PA to Group Manager – Community Resilience, Nicky Hansen  
NRC Committee Secretariat, Erica Wade  
FNDC Donald Sheppard  
KDC CEO, Louise Millar  
KDC Climate Change Advisor, Katy Simon  
WDC Senior Strategic Planner, Bernadette Aperahama  
WDC Manager - Infrastructure Planning, Sarah Irwin  
Tangata whenua representative, Rose Tana  
Te Kahu o Taonui, Kiri Sloane-Hobson  
NorthTec Principal Academic, Peter Bruce-Iri

#### Part Meeting

KDC Representative, Snow Tane – joined 1.23  
KDC representative, Fiona Kemp – departed 2.07pm with apologies  
KDC Mayor Jason Smith – departed 2.38pm with apologies  
NRC Communications Specialist, Mary de Ruyter – joined 2.43pm  
WDC, Emma Jelsma – joined 2.43pm

The Chair declared the meeting open with a karakia at 1.08pm.

Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee  
7 March 2022

### **Ngā Mahi Whakapai/Housekeeping (Item 1.0)**

The Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee meeting was held via audiovisual link due to COVID-19 Alert Levels and protocols. Members were advised that to ensure public access to the meeting, it was being livestreamed on the NRC YouTube Channel.

### **Ngā whakapahā/Apologies (Item 2.0)**

#### **Moved (Armstrong/Macdonald)**

That the apologies from NRC CEO Malcolm Nicholson and NRC tangata whenua representative Thomas Hohaia, for non-attendance be received.

**Carried**

### **Ngā whakapuakanga/Declarations of conflicts of interest (item 3.0)**

There were no declarations of conflicts of interest

### **Supplementary/Tabled Item(s) for [7 March 2022] (Item 6.6)**

**Report from Victoria Harwood, Pou Tiaki Hapori - GM Community Resilience**

#### **Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation**

#### **Moved (Kemp/Armstrong)**

That as permitted under section 46A(7) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 the following supplementary/tabled report be received:

- Additional Amendments to the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee Terms of Reference.

4 in favour 2 against

**Carried**

***Secretarial note:** Due to the lateness of this supplementary / tabled item those against would like it deferred to the next meetings in May.*

### **Confirmation of Minutes - 29 November 2021 (Item 4.1)**

**Report from Erica Wade, Personal Assistant - Environmental Services**

#### **Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation**

#### **Moved (Armstrong/Macdonald)**

That the minutes of the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee meeting held on 29 November 2021, be confirmed as a true and correct record.

**Carried**

Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee  
7 March 2022

### **Receipt of Action Sheet (Item 5.1)**

**Report from Erica Wade, Personal Assistant - Environmental Services**

**Nga mahi tutohutia / Recommendation**

**Moved (Smith/Kemp)**

That the action sheet be received.

**Carried**

**Secretarial note:** Confirmation the next Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee meeting will be held on 30 May 1pm.

### **Adopting Terms of Reference (Item 6.1)**

**Report from Victoria Harwood, Pou Tiaki Hapori - GM Community Resilience**

**Moved (Armstrong/Murphy)**

**Recommendation(s)**

1. That the report 'Adopting Terms of Reference' by Victoria Harwood, Pou Tiaki Hapori - GM Community Resilience and dated 17 February 2022, be received.
2. That the attached Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee Terms of Reference are endorsed.
3. That the Joint Committee recommend the revised Terms of Reference be adopted by each member council.

**Carried**

**Secretarial note:** The typo on page 11 should read 'inconsistent', not 'consistent'. This will be amended.

**Secretarial Note:** As per standing order 23.4 the mover and seconder agreed to substitute the motion with the following amendment:

**Moved (Armstrong/Murphy)**

1. Recommendation number 3 to be written as; That the Joint Committee recommend the revised Terms of Reference be put to each member of council for consideration and adoption.

**Carried**

Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee  
7 March 2022

## Joint Strategy update (Item 6.2)

Report from Jan van der Vliet, Natural Hazards Advisor and Justin Murfitt, Strategic Policy Specialist

Moved (Kemp/Smith)

### Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation

- That the report 'Joint Strategy update' by Jan van der Vliet, Natural Hazards Advisor and Justin Murfitt, Strategic Policy Specialist and dated 9 February 2022, be received.
- That the included Foreword to the Te Tai Tokerau Climate Change Adaptation Strategy be endorsed by the Committee.

Carried

*Secretarial note: That the following minor changes are made to the adaptation strategy before being considered by each council:*

Moved (Kemp/Smith)

- The foreword be relocated to precede the Executive Summary*
  - On the signatory page amend the text so it refers to Kaipara District hapu / iwi representatives; Whangarei District hapu / iwi representatives; Far North District hapu / iwi representatives; Northland Regional Council Tai Tokerau Maori and Council (TTMAC) representatives*
  - In the Author section, add commentary on the process to select tangata whenua representatives*
- That the committee endorse the text relating to 1(iii) being approved by the Chair and Deputy Chair before being included*
  - That the committee recommends the adaptation strategy with amendments outlined above be adopted by all member councils*

Carried

## Peer review of the Joint Strategy (Item 6.3)

Report from Justin Murfitt, Strategic Policy Specialist

### Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation

Moved (Murphy / Macdonald)

1. That the report 'Peer review of the Joint Strategy' by Justin Murfitt, Strategic Policy Specialist and dated 9 February 2022, be received.

Carried

Moved (Macdonald/Clendon)

2. The Committee agree to incorporating the findings of the peer review into a wider review of the strategy later this year once pending central government initiatives are available (such as the National Adaptation and Emissions Reduction plans).

Carried

Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee  
7 March 2022

**Action:** Delaraine to speak with hapu/iwi to identify who can review the strategy against mātauranga maori content and strategic direction. Staff to contact Delaraine for clarity.

**Action:** CATT will review options for the Matauranga Maori Review and the process and report back to the JCCAC.

**Secretarial note:** Secretariat will record actions on the action sheet for future reference.

## **Update on branding and identity process, including snapshot (Item 6.4)**

Report from Mary De Ruyter, Communications Specialist

Moved (Armstrong / Murphy)

### **Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation**

That the report 'Update on branding and identity process, including snapshot' by Mary De Ruyter, Communications Specialist and dated 9 February 2022, be received.

Carried

**Secretarial note:** The branding and identity process will feed into the mātauranga perspective to climate change.

## **Additional Amendment to Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee Terms of Reference (Item 6.6)**

Report from Victoria Harwood, Pou Tiaki Hapori - GM Community Resilience

Recommendation(s)

Moved (Snow/Murphy)

1. That the report 'Additional Amendment to Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee Terms of Reference' by Victoria Harwood, Pou Tiaki Hapori - GM Community Resilience and dated 4 March 2022, be received.

Carried

Moved (Snow/Macdonald)

2. That the Committee endorse the addition of the 'Joint Committee not discharged at triennial elections' for inclusion in the committee Terms of Reference.

Carried

Moved (Clendon/Macdonald)

3. That the committee endorses member councils to have the committee Terms of Reference adopted by their councils at the next council meetings.

**Secretarial note:** Recommendation 3, to be removed as it has been already agreed to in item 6.1

Carried

## **Whakamutunga (Conclusion)**

The meeting concluded with a karakia at 3.10pm.

Joint Regional Economic Development Committee  
11 March 2022

## Joint Regional Economic Development Committee Minutes

Meeting held remotely  
on Friday 11 March 2022, commencing at 10.00am

### Tuhinga/Present:

Chairperson, Councillor Justin Blaikie  
Councillor Anna Curnow (KDC) Deputy Chair  
Councillor John Vujcich (FNDC)  
Councillor Peter Wethey (KDC)

### I Tae Mai/In Attendance:

#### Full Meeting

Nicole Anderson (NINC) Chair  
Geoff Chopstick (NINC)  
Vaughan Cooper (NINC)  
Jason Marris (KDC)  
Piripi Moore (NINC)  
Jude Thompson (NINC)  
Auriol Ruka GM of Governance and Engagement Group (NRC)  
Darryl Jones Economist (NRC)  
Emmanouela Galanou Economic Policy Advisor (NRC)  
Briar Macken (FNDC)  
Meloney Tupou Administration (NRC)

The Chair declared the meeting open at 10.20am.

#### Secretarial Note:

- *There was a delay in the starting time of the meeting as the Chair waited until the Joint Committee's members quorum requirements had been met.*
- *Due to the current Covid-19 restrictions and the meeting being conducted fully remotely, proceedings were livestreamed in order to be open to the public.*

### Karakia Tīmatanga Justin Blaikie

### Ngā whakapahā/Apologies (Item 1.0)

Councillor Terry Archer (NRC)

Joint Regional Economic Development Committee  
11 March 2022

### **Confirmation of Minutes - 10 December 2021 (Item 4.1)**

**Report from Emmanouela Galanou, Economic Policy Advisor and Darryl Jones, Economist**

**Moved (Peter Wethey / Anna Curnow)**

**Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation**

That the minutes of the Joint Regional Economic Development Committee meeting held on 10 December 2021 be confirmed as a true and correct record.

**Carried**

### **Receipt of Action Sheet (Item 5.1)**

**Report from Emmanouela Galanou, Economic Policy Advisor and Darryl Jones, Economist**

**Moved (Justin Blaikie / John Vujcich)**

**Nga mahi tutohutia / Recommendation**

That the action sheet be received.

**Carried**

*Secretarial Note:*

- *The Joint Committee would like an update on the preparation process of the Economic Development Strategy at its meeting on 17 June 2022.*
- *The Joint Committee noted that there is interest at the council level to hear directly on the preparation of the regional economic development strategy.*

### **Northland Inc Limited Reporting Against Statement of Intent 2021-2024: Second Quarter 2021/2022 (Item 6.1)**

**Report from Emmanouela Galanou, Economic Policy Advisor; Darryl Jones, Economist and Simon Crabb, Finance Manager**

**Moved (Justin Blaikie / Peter Wethey)**

**Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation**

That the report 'Northland Inc Limited Reporting Against Statement of Intent 2021-2024: Second Quarter 2021/2022' by Emmanouela Galanou, Economic Policy Advisor; Darryl Jones, Economist and Simon Crabb, Finance Manager and dated 22 February 2022, be received.

**Carried**

*Secretarial Note:*

- *Northland Inc to meet with the KDC representatives to provide more detail on the delivery of the Regional Business Programme in Kaipara.*
- *Northland Inc to investigate potential error on the financial reporting under "Total vehicles".*

Joint Regional Economic Development Committee  
11 March 2022

## **Northland Inc Limited Statement of Intent 2022-2025: Draft received from Northland Inc (Item 6.2)**

**Report from Emmanouela Galanou, Economic Policy Advisor and Darryl Jones, Economist**

**Moved (Justin Blaikie / Anna Curnow)**

### **Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation**

That the report 'Northland Inc Limited Statement of Intent 2022-2025: Draft received from Northland Inc' by Emmanouela Galanou, Economic Policy Advisor and Darryl Jones, Economist and dated 3 March 2022, be received.

**Carried**

*Secretarial Note:*

- *In relation to the discussion on Renewable Energy Zones, Nicole Anderson asked that it be recorded that she is a director of Top Energy Limited.*

## **Annual Work Plan 2022/23 (Item 6.3)**

**Report from Emmanouela Galanou, Economic Policy Advisor and Darryl Jones, Economist**

### **Recommendation(s)**

1. That the report 'Annual Work Plan 2022/23' by Emmanouela Galanou, Economic Policy Advisor and Darryl Jones, Economist and dated 28 February 2022, be received.
2. That the Joint Regional Economic Development Committee agrees to the Annual Work Plan as set out in **Attachment 1** of this report.

**Carried**

*Secretarial Note:*

- *The Joint Committee would like to the workshop discussion on the appointment of Northland Inc directors from September 2022 to December 2022.*
- *Introduction of new Joint Regional Economic Development Committee staff group member who is representing the Far North District Council, Briar. Apologies were made by Justin for not introducing her earlier.*

## **Whakamutunga (Conclusion)**

**The meeting concluded at 11.15am.**



Audit and Risk Subcommittee  
30 March 2022

## **Audit and Risk Subcommittee Minutes**

Meeting held in the Held remotely  
on Wednesday 30 March 2022, commencing at 10.00am

### **Tuhinga/Present:**

Chairperson, Colin Kitchen  
Councillor Amy Macdonald  
Councillor Joce Yeoman  
Councillor Rick Stolwerk  
Ex-Officio Penny Smart  
Independent Audit & Risk Advisor Danny Tuato'o  
Independent Finance Advisor Stuart Henderson

### **I Tae Mai/In Attendance:**

#### **Full Meeting**

Pou Taumatua - GM Corporate Services – Bruce Howse  
Tumuaki – Chief Executive Officer – Malcolm Nicolson  
Finance Manager – Simon Crabb  
Personal Assistant Corporate Services – Judy Graham

#### **Part Meeting**

Human Resources Manager – Beryl Steele  
Corporate Systems Champion – Kym Ace  
Corporate Strategy Manager – Kyla Carlier  
Deloitte Partner – Peter Gulliver  
Deloitte Forensic I Risk Advisory – Ian Tuke  
Deloitte Associated Director I Forensic I Risk Advisory – Dominic Salmon

The Chair declared the meeting open at 10.03am with a Karakia by Independent Audit & Risk Advisor

### **Ngā Mahi Whakapai/Housekeeping (Item 1.0)**

### **Ngā whakapahā/Apologies (Item 2.0)**

There were no apologies.

### **Nga whakapuakanga/Declarations of Conflicts of Interest (Item 3.0)**

It was advised that members should make declarations item-by-item as the meeting progressed.

Audit and Risk Subcommittee  
30 March 2022

### **Confirmation of Minutes - 24 November 2021 (Item 4.1)**

**Report from Judith Graham, Corporate Services P/A**

**Moved(Smart / Yeoman)**

That the minutes of the Audit and Risk subcommittee meeting held on 24 November 2021 be confirmed as a true and correct record.

**Carried**

### **Internal Audit Schedule (Item 5.1)**

**Report from Judith Graham, Corporate Services P/A**

**Moved (Kitchen / Macdonald)**

That the report 'Internal Audit Schedule' by Judith Graham, Corporate Services P/A and dated 11 January 2022, be received.

**Carried**

*Secretarial Note: Item 5.2 Audit Fee Proposal For Year Ending 30 June 2022 and 30 June 2023 was addressed following Item 5.3 Deloitte -Fraud and Corruption Risk Assessment*

### **Audit Fee Proposal For Year Ending 30 June 2022 and 30 June 2023 (Item 5.2)**

**Report from Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services**

**Moved (Stolwerk / Smart)**

1. That the report 'Audit Fee Proposal For Year Ending 30 June 2022 and 30 June 2023' by Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services and dated 11 February 2022, be received.
2. That the subcommittee recommend to council the approval of **base** audit fees of \$156,300 for FY22 and a further \$15k in audit fees for the Enterprise Project implementation workstream.
3. That the subcommittee recommend to council the approval of **base** audit fees of \$178,800 for FY23 and a further \$25k in audit fees for the Enterprise Project implementation workstream.
4. That the subcommittee recommend to council the agreement in principle to the approach outlined in the **attached** Deloitte proposal for the setting of audit fees for FY24 and FY25.

**Carried**

Northland Regional Council counteroffer 2023 audit fees was accepted by Deloitte and approved by the AOG.

Fee proposal for 2023 has now been included.

Setting principles and guidelines on fees going forward 2024 and 2025.

Deloitte Partner Peter Gulliver advised the Subcommittee that he would be stepping down at the end of this year due to the rotation rule.

Audit and Risk Subcommittee  
30 March 2022

## **Deloitte - Fraud and Corruption Risk Assessment (Item 5.3)**

### **Report from Simon Crabb, Finance Manager**

#### **Moved (Stolwerk / Smart)**

1. That the report 'Deloitte - Fraud and Corruption Risk Assessment' by Simon Crabb, Finance Manager and dated 11 January 2022, be received.

#### **Carried**

*Secretarial Note: additional recommendation added to item 5.3*

#### **Moved (Kitchen / Smart)**

2. Subcommittee support the implementation of the recommendation outlined in the fraud and corruption report by Deloitte.

#### **Carried**

Deloitte Forensic I Risk Advisory Ian Tuke and Deloitte Associated Director I Forensic I Risk Advisory Dominic Salmon went through the fraud and corruption risk assessment presentation with the subcommittee which included the fraud gap analysis, survey and workshops outcomes.

#### **Actions:**

- Councillors to receive fraud awareness training 2-3 hour workshop
- Complete review of strengthen the Fraud limitation officer role – and who they report to in the organisation.
- Continue with implementation of the whistle blower independent phone line.
- GM Corporate Services to start implementing recommendations from the Deloitte fraud and corruption risk assessment report outlined on pages 34-36 of the report.

## **Internal Audit Update - Kaipara District Council Rating Review (Item 5.4)**

### **Report from Simon Crabb, Finance Manager**

*Secretarial Note: Subcommittee confirms receiving via email Tuesday 29 March updated Rates review – Kaipara District Council.*

#### **Moved (Stolwerk / Kitchen)**

- That the report 'Internal Audit Update - Kaipara District Council Rating Review' by Simon Crabb, Finance Manager and dated 4 March 2022, be received.

#### **Carried**

Deloitte Partner – Peter Gulliver spoke to the subcommittee on the finding of the recent Kaipara District Council review.

Finding were consistent to that of Far North District Council is that far too many people had access to the rating system. Deloitte has recommended and Kaipara District Council has agreed to reduce the number of staff having access to the rating system.

Deloitte Partner – Peter Gulliver highlighted to the Subcommittee the issue with the Kaipara District Council Rating system on the allocation of part payments, with part payments first allocated to Kaipara District Council.

#### **Action:**

Audit and Risk Subcommittee  
30 March 2022

- GM Corporate Services to follow up on Far North District Council on the progression on modifying their rating system.
- Rating service agreements to be modified to include appropriate allocation methodology for 2022/2023 of all Territorial Authorities.

### **Internal Audit Maturity Assessment (Item 5.5)**

#### **Report from Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services**

1. That the report 'Internal Audit Maturity Assessment' by Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services and dated 12 January 2022, be received.

Subcommittee have agreed not to accept item 5.5 Internal Audit Maturity Assessment report as general consensus of the Subcommittee felt there was missing information that would have likely alter the outcome of the assessment.

#### **Moved (Stolwerk/Smart)**

Internal Audit Maturity Assessment (item 5.5) to remain laid on the table until a further review has been completed.

#### **Carried**

**Action:** GM Corporate Services, Chief Executive Officer, Independent Audit & Risk Advisor Independent Finance Advisor to meet with Deloitte Partner – Peter Gulliver for future discussion and tightening up the wording on the report.

### **Investment Policy Revision - Incorporate Protocols for Reporting Investment Fund Gains/Losses (Item 5.6)**

#### **Report from Simon Crabb, Finance Manager**

#### **Moved (Kitchen / Stolwerk )**

1. That the report 'Investment Policy Revision - Incorporate Protocols for Reporting Investment Fund Gains/Losses' by Simon Crabb, Finance Manager and dated 15 March 2022, be received.
2. That the subcommittee endorse that the proposed changes presented in this report are incorporated into councils Investment Policy

#### **Carried**

#### **Action:**

- Gains and losses to be explained to whole Council for a better understanding on the long term investment.
- More thinking to be done around the amount of reserve to be transferred – historical gains last 3 to 5 year and report back to the subcommittee.

Audit and Risk Subcommittee  
30 March 2022

## **Local Government Funding Agency (LGFA) Presentation & Funding Strategy Considerations (Item 5.7)**

**Report from Simon Crabb, Finance Manager**

**Moved (Kitchen /Stolwerk)**

That the report 'Local Government Funding Agency (LGFA) Presentation & Funding Strategy Considerations' by Simon Crabb, Finance Manager and dated 17 March 2022, be received.

**Carried**

Finance Manager spoke to the Subcommittee and highlighted it would be more prudent for Council to consider using own council money to fund project instead of borrowing funds from the Local Government Funding Agency when interest rates hit a certain threshold.

**Action:** Workshop and work with the Investment and Property Subcommittee to look at a new long term strategy on how we fund projects in a changing environment.

## **Risk Management Activity Update (Item 5.8)**

**Report from Kym Ace, Corporate Systems Champion**

**Moved (Stolwerk / Macdonald)**

1. That the report 'Risk Management Activity Update' by Kym Ace, Corporate Systems Champion and dated 2 December 2021, be received.
2. That changes to the Risk Management Policy and Framework be approved

**Carried**

Corporate Systems Champion spoke to the subcommittee about the Risk management activity.

**Action:**

- Review item 5 Investment portfolio financial risk.
- Councillor Smart to meet with Independent Audit & Risk Advisor Danny Tuato'o and Chief Executive Office to do more work on overview of the inherit risk and residual risks and take back to Council.

## **Risk Deep Dive on workload and Capability and Operational capacity to manage events and directives (Item 5.9)**

**Report from Kym Ace, Corporate Systems Champion**

**Moved (Stolwerk / Smart )**

- 12.261. That the report 'Risk Deep Dive on workload and Capability and Operational capacity to manage events and directives' by Kym Ace, Corporate Systems Champion and dated 11 January 2022, be received.

**Carried**

Corporate Systems Champion advised that the two deep dive completed were amalgamated together due to overlap.

GM Corporate Service advised the Subcommittee on work the Executive leadership team is doing around staff workloads as this again has been identified as one of the top staff stress indicated in the all staff stress survey.

Audit and Risk Subcommittee  
30 March 2022

Subcommittee support the work and treatment that has been noted in the report.

**Action:** Executive leadership team to bring back to council to workshop on what work has been identify that potentially staff can stop, pause, defer.

## **Health and Safety Update (Item 5.10)**

**Report from Beryl Steele, Human Resources Manager**

**Moved (Macdonald / Stolwerk )**

1. That the report 'Health and Safety Update' by Beryl Steele, Human Resources Manager and dated 2 December 2021, be received.

**Carried**

Human Resources Manager gave an update regarding the replacement of Health and Safety Advisor role currently unable to find person who is the right fit for the organisation.

**Action:** Human Resources Manager to relook at risk ranking Extended workload/stress as noted as a residual score 9.

## **Insurance Summary 2021/2022 (Item 5.11)**

**Report from Judith Graham, Corporate Services P/A**

**Moved ( Stolwerk / Macdonald)**

- That the report 'Insurance Summary 2021/2022' by Judith Graham, Corporate Services P/A and dated 11 January 2022, be received.

**Carried**

GM Corporate Service advise the subcommittee that there has been an 8.1% increase in the insurance premium.

## **Kaupapa ā Roto/Business with Public Excluded (Item 6.0)**

**Moved ( Stolwerk / Macdonald )**

1. That the public be excluded from the proceedings of this meeting to consider confidential matters.
2. That the general subject of the matters to be considered whilst the public is excluded, the reasons for passing this resolution in relation to this matter, and the specific grounds under the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution, are as follows:

Item No.	Item Issue	Reasons/Grounds
6.1	Confirmation of Confidential Minutes - 24 November 2021	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, as stated in the open section of the meeting -

Audit and Risk Subcommittee  
30 March 2022

6.2	Cyber Security update	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, the withholding of which is necessary to protect information where the making available of the information would be likely unreasonably to prejudice the commercial position of the person who supplied or who is the subject of the information s7(2)(b)(ii) and the withholding of which is necessary to prevent the disclosure or use of official information for improper gain or improper advantage s7(2)(j).
-----	-----------------------	--

3. That the Independent Advisors be permitted to stay during business with the public excluded.

Carried

### **Whakamutunga (Conclusion)**

**The meeting concluded at 12.29pm** led by a Karakia by Independent Audit & Risk Advisor Danny Tuato'o .

Investment and Property Subcommittee  
30 March 2022

## Investment and Property Subcommittee Minutes

Meeting held in the Held remotely  
on Wednesday 30 March 2022, commencing at 1.00pm

### **Tuhinga/Present:**

Chairperson, NRC Councillor, Rick Stolwerk  
Ex-Officio Penny Smart  
Councillor Justin Blaikie  
Councillor Colin Kitchen  
Councillor Jack Craw  
Councillor Terry Archer  
Independent Consultant Jonathan Eriksen  
Independent Finance Advisor Stuart Henderson

### **I Tae Mai/In Attendance:**

#### **Full Meeting**

Pou Taumatua - GM Corporate Services  
Tumuaki – Chief Executive Officer – Malcolm Nicolson  
Finance Manager – Simon Crabb  
Strategic Projects and Facilities Manager – Phil Heatley  
PA Corporate Services – Judy Graham

#### **Part Meeting**

Northland Forest Managers Ltd Manager– George Dods  
Biodiversity Manager – Lisa Foster  
Biodiversity Advisor – Stephanie Tong  
EriksensGlobal – Janibek Issagulov

The Chair declared the meeting open at 1.02pm with a Karakia by Councillor Stolwerk

### **Ngā Mahi Whakapai/Housekeeping (Item 1.0)**

### **Ngā whakapahā/Apologies (Item 2.0)**

#### **Moved (Kitchen / Archer)**

That the apologies from Independent Audit & Risk Advisor Danny Tuato'o for non-attendance be received.

**Carried**

### **Nga whakapuakanga/Declarations of Conflicts of Interest (Item 3.0)**

It was advised that members should make declarations item-by-item as the meeting progressed.



Investment and Property Subcommittee  
30 March 2022

## **Confirmation of Minutes - 24 November 2021 (Item 4.1)**

**Report from Judith Graham, Corporate Services P/A**

**Moved (Stolwerk / Archer)**

That the minutes of the Investment and Property Subcommittee meeting held on 24 November 2021 be confirmed as a true and correct record.

**Carried**

*Secretarial Note:* Item 6.1 Property Management Plan and Investment Policy. Item to be taken off line to be discussed further around the wording of recreation, amenity, and ecology before going to Councillor only time or Council workshop.

**Action:** Councillor Smart, Councillor Craw, Councillor Stolwerk to meet with GM Corporate Services.

*Secretarial Note:* Councillor Blaikie at 1.18pm Lost audio visual for a short time.

## **Performance of Councils Externally Managed Funds to 28 February 2022 (Item 5.1)**

**Report from Simon Crabb, Finance Manager**

**Moved (Archer / Craw)**

That the report 'Performance of Councils Externally Managed Funds to 28 February 2022' by Simon Crabb, Finance Manager and dated 17 March 2022, be received.

**Carried**

GM Corporate Services spoke to the committee and advised Councils Externally Managed Funds have made a loss of \$118,000 to the end of February 2022.

Independent Consultant Jonathan Eriksen working hard to de risk portfolio and is in constant contact with finance team on ways to do this.

*Secretarial Note:* The subcommittee noted that the exposure to the QuayStreet income Fund in the Short-Term Investment Fund exceeded the corresponding SIPO Limit. However, it was acknowledged that the QuayStreet income Fund is a low-risk product, and that the breach would be remedied when surplus Q3 rates funding and the Marsden Maritime Holding Limited interim dividend is invested into the Short-Term Investment Fund

## **Responsible Investment Report December 2021 (Item 5.2)**

**Report from Judith Graham, Corporate Services P/A**

**Moved (Stolwerk / Smart)**

1. That the report 'Responsible Investment Report December 2021' by Judith Graham, Corporate Services P/A and dated 03 March 2022 be received.

**Carried**

Independent Consultant Jonathan Eriksen spoke to the subcommittee and gave noted that Milford is investing more in fossil fuels currently to achieve a positive return and advised that Milford has a strong ESG process, and this would not compromise Northland Regional Council 5-year plan on reducing ESR limits.

Investment and Property Subcommittee  
30 March 2022

**Action:** Independent Consultant Jonathan Eriksen to report back to the next Investment and Property Subcommittee 29 June 2022 with some additional advice on how Northland Regional Council can achieve its ESR end target in 5 years' time what that specifically looks like.

## **Mount Tiger Forest Report (Item 5.3)**

### **Report from Nicole Inger, Property Officer**

*Secretarial Note: The Chair acknowledged Ian Jenkins passing and welcome George Dods*

### **Moved (Craw / Stolwerk)**

1. That the report 'Mount Tiger Forest Report' by Nicole Inger, Property Officer and dated 16 March 2022, be received.

### **Carried**

Northland Forest Managers – George Dods addressed the subcommittee and gave an overview of the Mount Tiger Forest this included damage from a recent storm event and unauthorised motor bike access.

Biodiversity Manager gave an update on the recent interim report completed on the forest and its findings and advising the subcommittee the forest has high diversity and of high value.

### **Action:**

- Northland Forest Managers Ltd Manager – George Dods to put up more signage on the gates around the Mount Tiger Forest.
- Biodiversity Manager to follow up on annual plan budget for pest and weed and complete additional report

## **Kaupapa ā Roto/Business with Public Excluded (Item 6.0)**

### **Moved (Stolwerk / Smart) 2.21pm**

1. That the public be excluded from the proceedings of this meeting to consider confidential matters.
2. That the general subject of the matters to be considered whilst the public is excluded, the reasons for passing this resolution in relation to this matter, and the specific grounds under the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution, are as follows:

Item No.	Item Issue	Reasons/Grounds
6.1	Confirmation of Confidential Minutes - 24 November 2021	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, as stated in the open section of the meeting -
6.2	Northland Private Equity Fund Update	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, the withholding of which is necessary to enable council to carry out, without prejudice or disadvantage, commercial activities s7(2)(h).

Investment and Property Subcommittee  
30 March 2022

6.3	Summary of Kensington Crossing Redevelopment Project	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, the withholding of which is necessary to protect information where the making available of the information would be likely unreasonably to prejudice the commercial position of the person who supplied or who is the subject of the information s7(2)(b)(ii) and the withholding of which is necessary to enable council to carry out, without prejudice or disadvantage, commercial activities s7(2)(h).
6.4	Update on Council's Current Property Redevelopments	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, the withholding of which is necessary to enable council to carry out, without prejudice or disadvantage, commercial activities s7(2)(h) and the withholding of which is necessary to enable council to carry on, without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations) s7(2)(i).
6.5	Current Property Negotiations	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, the withholding of which is necessary to protect information where the making available of the information would be likely unreasonably to prejudice the commercial position of the person who supplied or who is the subject of the information s7(2)(b)(ii), the withholding of which is necessary to enable council to carry out, without prejudice or disadvantage, commercial activities s7(2)(h) and the withholding of which is necessary to enable council to carry on, without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations) s7(2)(i).
6.6	Council's Water Street Offices	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, the withholding of which is necessary to protect information where the making available of the information would be likely unreasonably to prejudice the commercial position of the person who supplied or who is the subject of the information s7(2)(b)(ii) and the withholding of which is necessary to enable council to carry on, without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations) s7(2)(i).

3. That the Independent Advisors be permitted to stay during business with the public excluded.

**Carried**

## Whakamutunga (Conclusion)

The meeting concluded at 3.19pm led by a Karakia by Councillor Stolwerk

Regional Transport Committee  
5 April 2022

## Regional Transport Committee Minutes

Meeting held in the Remotely via Zoom link  
on Tuesday 5 April 2022, commencing at 11.00am

### **Tuhinga/Present:**

Chairperson Rick Stolwerk  
FNDC, Councillor Ann Court  
KDC, Councillor David Wills  
WDC Alternate, Councillor Phil Halse  
Waka Kotahi Representative, Steve Mutton

### **I Tae Mai/In Attendance:**

#### **Full Meeting**

NRC Chair, Penny Smart  
NRC Group Manager - Community Resilience, Victoria Harwood  
NZ Police, Anne-Marie Fitchett  
NRC Ex Secretariat, Laura Exton  
NRC Secretariat, Nicky Hansen  
FNDC, Andy Finch  
Waka Kotahi, Brian Palalagi  
NTA, Chris Powell  
NTA, Ian Crayton-Brown  
Waka Kotahi, Kobus Du Toit  
Waka Kotahi, Louisa Mutu  
NTA, Calvin Thomas  
NTA, Jeffery Devine  
FNDC, Kerry Stratford  
NTA, Nick Marshall  
Far North REAP, Angelene Waitohi  
NRC Digital Coordinator - Social & Content, Meloney Tupou

#### **Part Meeting**

NRC Councillor Jack Craw attended 12.37pm

The Chair declared the meeting open at 11.02am.

### **Ngā Mahi Whakapai/Housekeeping (Item 1.0)**

### **Ngā whakapahā/Apologies (Item 2.0)**

#### **Moved (Halse / Stolwerk)**

That the apologies from WDC Councillor Greg Martin, NZTA Jackie Hori-Hoult for non-attendance be received.

**Carried**

Regional Transport Committee  
5 April 2022

*Secretarial note: Apologies from Deputy Chair Terry Archer were received during the meeting, he was unable to join due to technical difficulties.*

### **Nga whakapuakanga/Declarations of Conflicts of Interest (Item 3.0)**

It was advised that members should make declarations item-by-item as the meeting progressed.

### **Confirmation of Minutes - 8 December 2021 (Item 4.1)**

**Report from Nicky Hansen, PA to GM Community Resilience**

**Moved (Wills/Stolwerk)**

That the minutes of the Regional Transport Committee meeting held on 8 December 2021, be confirmed as a true and correct record.

**Carried**

### **Receipt of Action Sheet (Item 4.2)**

**Report from Nicky Hansen, PA to GM Community Resilience**

**Moved (Wills/Stolwerk)**

**Whakarāpopototanga / Executive summary**

The purpose of this report is to enable the meeting to receive the current action sheet.

---

### **Nga mahi tutohutia / Recommendation**

That the action sheet be received

**Carried**

### **Northland Regional Land Transport Plan 2021-2027 Funding Uptake (Item 5.1)**

**Report from Chris Powell, Transport Manager - Northland Transportation Alliance**

**Moved (Stolwerk/Court)**

That the report 'Northland Regional Land Transport Plan 2021-2027 Funding Uptake' by Chris Powell, Transport Manager - Northland Transport Alliance and dated 16 March 2022, be received.

**Carried**

### **Waka Kotahi Northland Activity and Funding update (Item 6.1)**

**Report from Steve Mutton, NZTA - Director Regional Relationships Upper North Island**

**Moved (Court/Halse)**

That the report 'Waka Kotahi Northland Activity and Funding update' by Steve Mutton, NZTA - Director Regional Relationships Upper North Island and dated 21 March 2022, be received.

**Carried**

**Action:** Chair Councillor Stolwerk and Councillor Court are to discuss an approach moving forward to strengthen the Regional Transport Committee's voice in standing up for what Northland needs

Regional Transport Committee  
5 April 2022

*(involvement in national conversations and decisions being made regarding funding, projects, mode-sharing). Produce a plan that is workable. A way forward is to be discussed at the next RTC Workshop or Meeting.*

**Action:** *Waka Kotahi are to provide a breakdown of the funding allocation for the railway connecting the Whangārei Port (requested by Councillor Wills).*

**Action:** *Chair Councillor Stolwerk is to circulate the response from the Labour MPs to the Regional Transport Committee elected members once it is received, including a summary of what was originally tasked.*

## **Waka Kotahi Designing Driver Licencing Strategy report (Item 6.2)**

**Report from Steve Mutton, NZTA - Director Regional Relationships Upper North Island**

**Moved (Court/Stolwerk)**

That the report 'Waka Kotahi - Designing Driver Licencing Strategy' by Steve Mutton, Waka Kotahi Director Regional Relationships, Te Tai Tokerau me Tāmaki Makaurau, and dated 23 March 2022, be received.

**.Carried**

## **Northland to Auckland Four Lane Highway Update (Item 6.3)**

**Report from Steve Mutton, NZTA - Director Regional Relationships Upper North Island**

**Moved (Stolwerk/Martin)**

That the report 'Northland to Auckland Four Lane Highway Update' by Steve Mutton, NZTA - Director Regional Relationships Upper North Island and dated 21 March 2022, be received.

**Carried**

## **Northland Road Safety Update (Item 6.4)**

**Report from Ian Crayton-Brown, Transport Projects Officer and Chris Powell, Transport Manager - Northland Transportation Alliance**

**Moved (Wills/Stolwerk)**

That the report 'Northland Road Safety Update' by Ian Crayton-Brown, Transport Projects Officer and Chris Powell, Transport Manager - Northland Transportation Alliance and dated 22 March 2022, be received.

**Carried**

**Action:** *Constable Anne-Marie Fitchett, Road Policing Manager, NZ Police, to provide final copy of the police report (Northland Road Policing Plan 2022).*

**Action:** *Councillor Court has volunteered to be a "Road Safety Hero", as referenced on page 53 of the Regional Transport Committee 5 April 2022 Agenda. Chair Councillor Stolwerk would also be interested in participating.*

Regional Transport Committee  
5 April 2022

## **Te Huringa Taraiwa: Te Arotake I Te Punaha Utu Kaiwhakamahi Rori/Driving Change: Reviewing the Road User Charges System (Item 7.1)**

**Report from Chris Powell, Transport Manager - Northland Transportation Alliance**

### **Moved (Wills/Court)**

1. That the report 'Te Huringa Taraiwa: Te Arotake I Te Punaha Utu Kaiwhakamahi Rori/Driving Change: Reviewing the Road User Charges System' by Chris Powell, Transport Manager - Northland Transport Alliance and dated 22 March 2022, be received.
2. That the Northland Regional Transport Committee delegate to representatives of the Northland Transportation Alliance to compile a draft regional submission on the Committees behalf based on the recommendations made in Attachment II.
3. That the draft submission be circulated to all elected members for comment.
4. That a final submission be compiled incorporating agreed changes and this be circulated to the Regional Transport Committee members for final approval.
5. That the Chair of the Regional Transport Committee be given authority to make minor formatting and grammatical changes and sign the final submission prior to the document being sent to the Ministry of Transport before the consultation closing on 22 April 2022.

Submission: Cr Court if we charge more for trucks we pay more for goods received. What is productivity impact? Refer to Question 8 (page 80).

All five recommendations be moved and all and any replies to be received and completed to one final submission.

**Carried**

### **Whakamutunga (Conclusion)**

**The meeting concluded at 12.47.**

## TITLE: Business with the Public Excluded

---

### Whakarāpopototanga / Executive Summary

The purpose of this report is to recommend that the public be excluded from the proceedings of this meeting to consider the confidential matters detailed below for the reasons given.

---

### Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendations

1. That the public be excluded from the proceedings of this meeting to consider confidential matters.
2. That the general subject of the matters to be considered whilst the public is excluded, the reasons for passing this resolution in relation to this matter, and the specific grounds under the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution, are as follows:

Item No.	Item Issue	Reasons/Grounds
10.1	Confirmation of CONFIDENTIAL Minutes - Council Meeting 23 March 2022 and CONFIDENTIAL Minutes - Extraordinary Council Meeting 12 April 2022	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, as stated in the open section of the meeting -.
10.2	Receipt of Committee CONFIDENTIAL Minutes	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, as stated in the open section of the meeting -.
10.3	Human Resources Report - March 2022	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, the withholding of which is necessary to protect the privacy of natural persons, including that of deceased natural persons s7(2)(a).
10.4	Summary Report on the Kensington Crossing Redevelopment Project	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, the withholding of which is necessary to protect information where the making available of the information would be likely unreasonably to prejudice the commercial position of the person who supplied or who is the subject of the information s7(2)(b)(ii) and the withholding of which is necessary to enable council to carry out, without prejudice or disadvantage, commercial activities s7(2)(h).
10.5	Private Equity Consideration	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, the withholding of which is necessary to enable council to carry out, without prejudice or disadvantage, commercial activities s7(2)(h).

3. That the Independent Financial Advisors be permitted to stay during business with the public excluded.
- 

### Considerations

#### 1. Options

Not applicable. This is an administrative procedure.



## **2. Significance and Engagement**

This is a procedural matter required by law. Hence when assessed against council policy is deemed to be of low significance.

## **3. Policy and Legislative Compliance**

The report complies with the provisions to exclude the public from the whole or any part of the proceedings of any meeting as detailed in sections 47 and 48 of the Local Government Official Information Act 1987.

## **4. Other Considerations**

Being a purely administrative matter; Community Views, Māori Impact Statement, Financial Implications, and Implementation Issues are not applicable.